

# World Journal of *Hepatology*

*World J Hepatol* 2014 March 27; 6(3): 107-159





## Editorial Board

2014-2017

The *World Journal of Hepatology* Editorial Board consists of 469 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in hepatology. They are from 53 countries, including Algeria (1), Argentina (6), Armenia (1), Australia (1), Austria (4), Bangladesh (2), Belgium (3), Botswana (2), Brazil (13), Bulgaria (2), Canada (3), Chile (1), China (98), Czech Republic (1), Denmark (2), Egypt (12), France (6), Germany (19), Greece (11), Hungary (5), India (15), Indonesia (2), Iran (4), Israel (1), Italy (52), Japan (35), Jordan (1), Malaysia (2), Mexico (3), Moldova (1), Netherlands (3), Nigeria (1), Pakistan (1), Philippines (2), Poland (1), Portugal (2), Qatar (1), Romania (6), Russia (2), Saudi Arabia (4), Singapore (1), South Korea (11), Spain (20), Sri Lanka (1), Sudan (1), Sweden (1), Switzerland (1), Thailand (4), Turkey (21), Ukraine (3), United Kingdom (17), and United States (56).

### EDITORS-IN-CHIEF

Clara Balsano, Rome  
Wan-Long Chuang, Kaohsiung

### GUEST EDITORIAL BOARD MEMBERS

King-Wah Chiu, Kaohsiung  
Tai-An Chiang, Tainan  
Chi-Tan Hu, Hualien  
Sen-Yung Hsieh, Taoyuan  
Wenya Huang, Tainan  
Liang-Yi Hung, Tainan  
Jih RU Hwu, Hsinchu  
Jing-Yi Lee, Taipei  
Mei-Hsuan Lee, Taipei  
Chih-Wen Lin, Kaohsiung  
Chun-Che Lin, Taichung  
Wan-Yu Lin, Taichung  
Tai-Long Pan, Tao-Yuan  
Suh-Ching Yang, Taipei  
Chun-Yan Yeung, Taipei

### MEMBERS OF THE EDITORIAL BOARD



**Algeria**

Samir Rouabhia, Batna



**Argentina**

Fernando O Bessone, Rosario  
Maria C Carrillo, Rosario  
Melisa M Dirchwolf, Buenos Aires  
Bernardo Frider, Buenos Aires

Jorge Quarleri, Buenos Aires  
Adriana M Torres, Rosario



**Armenia**

Narina Sargsyants, Yerevan



**Australia**

Mark D Gorrell, Sydney



**Austria**

Harald Hofer, Vienna  
Gustav Paumgartner, Vienna  
Matthias Pinter, Vienna  
Thomas Reiberger, Vienna



**Bangladesh**

Shahinul Alam, Dhaka  
Mamun Al Mahtab, Dhaka



**Belgium**

Nicolas Lanthier, Brussels  
Philip Meuleman, Ghent  
Luisa Vonghia, Antwerp



**Botswana**

Francesca Cainelli, Gaborone

Sandro Vento, Gaborone



**Brazil**

Edson Abdala, Sao Paulo  
Ilka FSF Boin, Campinas  
Niels OS Camara, Sao Paulo  
Ana Carolina FN Cardoso, Rio de Janeiro  
Roberto J Carvalho-Filho, Sao Paulo  
Julio CU Coelho, Curitiba  
Flavio Henrique Ferreira Galvao, São Paulo  
Janaina L Narciso-Schiavon, Florianopolis  
Sílvia HC Sales-Peres, Bauru  
Leonardo L Schiavon, Florianópolis  
Luciana D Silva, Belo Horizonte  
Vanessa Souza-Mello, Rio de Janeiro  
Jaques Waisberg, Santo André



**Bulgaria**

Mariana P Penkova-Radicheva, Stara Zagora  
Marieta Simonova, Sofia



**Canada**

Runjan Chetty, Toronto  
Michele Molinari, Halifax  
Giada Sebastiani, Montreal



**Chile**

Luis A Videla, Santiago



## China

Guang-Wen Cao, Shanghai  
 En-Qiang Chen, Chengdu  
 Gong-Ying Chen, Hangzhou  
 Jin-lian Chen, Shanghai  
 Jun Chen, Changsha  
 Alfred Cheng, Hong Kong  
 Chun-Ping Cui, Beijing  
 Shuang-Suo Dang, Xi'an  
 Ming-Xing Ding, Jinhua  
 Zhi-Jun Duang, Dalian  
 He-Bin Fan, Wuhan  
 Xiao-Ming Fan, Shanghai  
 James Yan Yue Fung, Hong Kong  
 Yi Gao, Guangzhou  
 Zuo-Jiong Gong, Wuhan  
 Zhi-Yong Guo, Guangzhou  
 Shao-Liang Han, Wenzhou  
 Tao Han, Tianjin  
 Jin-Yang He, Guangzhou  
 Ming-Liang He, Hong Kong  
 Can-Hua Huang, Chengdu  
 Bo Jin, Beijing  
 Shan Jin, Hohhot  
 Hui-Qing Jiang, Shijiazhuang  
 Wan-Yee Joseph Lau, Hong Kong  
 Guo-Lin Li, Changsha  
 Jin-Jun Li, Shanghai  
 Qiang Li, Jinan  
 Sheng Li, Jinan  
 Zong-Fang Li, Xi'an  
 Xu Li, Guangzhou  
 Xue-Song Liang, Shanghai  
 En-Qi Liu, Xi'an  
 Pei Liu, Shenyang  
 Zhong-Hui Liu, Changchun  
 Guang-Hua Luo, Changzhou  
 Yi Lv, Xi'an  
 Guang-Dong Pan, Liuzhou  
 Wen-Sheng Pan, Hangzhou  
 Jian-Min Qin, Shanghai  
 Wai-Kay Seto, Hong Kong  
 Hong Shen, Changsha  
 Xiao Su, Shanghai  
 Li-Ping Sun, Beijing  
 Wei-Hao Sun, Nanjing  
 Xue-Ying Sun, Harbin  
 Hua Tang, Tianjin  
 Ling Tian, Shanghai  
 Eric Tse, Hong Kong  
 Guo-Ying Wang, Changzhou  
 Yue Wang, Beijing  
 Shu-Qiang Wang, Chengdu  
 Mary MY Wayne, Hong Kong  
 Hong-Shan Wei, Beijing  
 Danny Ka-Ho Wong, Hong Kong  
 Grace Lai-Hung Wong, Hong Kong  
 Bang-Fu Wu, Dongguan  
 Feng Wu, Chongqing  
 Xiong-Zhi Wu, Tianjin  
 Chun-Fang Xu, Suzhou  
 Rui-An Xu, Quanzhou  
 Rui-Yun Xu, Guangzhou  
 Wei-Li Xu, Shijiazhuang  
 Shi-Ying Xuan, Qingdao  
 Ming-Xian Yan, Jinan  
 Lv-Nan Yan, Chengdu  
 Jin Yang, Hangzhou  
 Ji-Hong Yao, Dalian  
 Winnie Yeo, Hong Kong

Zheng Zeng, Beijing  
 Qi Zhang, Hangzhou  
 Shi-Jun Zhang, Guangzhou  
 Xiao-Lan Zhang, Shijiazhuang  
 Xiao-Yong Zhang, Guangzhou  
 Xin-Chen Zhang, Harbin  
 Yong Zhang, Xi'an  
 Hong-Chuan Zhao, Hefei  
 Ming-Hua Zheng, Wenzhou  
 Yu-Bao Zheng, Guangzhou  
 Ren-Qian Zhong, Shanghai  
 Fan Zhu, Wuhan  
 Xiao Zhu, Dongguan



## Czech Republic

Kamil Vysloulzil, Olomouc



## Denmark

Henning Gronbaek, Aarhus  
 Christian Mortensen, Hvidovre



## Egypt

Ihab T Abdel-Raheem, Damanhour  
 NGB G Bader EL Din, Cairo  
 Hatem Elalfy, Mansoura  
 Mahmoud M El-Bendary, Mansoura  
 Mona El SH El-Raziky, Cairo  
 Mohammad El-Sayed, Cairo  
 Yasser M Fouad, Minia  
 Mohamed AA Metwally, Benha  
 Hany Shehab, Cairo  
 Mostafa M Sira, Shebin El-koom  
 Ashraf Taye, Minia  
 MA Ali Wahab, Mansoura



## France

Laurent Alric, Toulouse  
 Sophie Conchon, Nantes  
 Daniel J Felmlee, Strasbourg  
 Herve Lerat, Creteil  
 Dominique Salmon, Paris  
 Jean-Pierre Vartanian, Paris



## Germany

Laura E Buitrago-Molina, Hannover  
 Enrico N De Toni, Munich  
 Oliver Ebert, Muenchen  
 Rolf Gebhardt, Leipzig  
 Janine V Hartl, Regensburg  
 Sebastian Hinz, Kiel  
 Benjamin Juntermanns, Essen  
 Roland Kaufmann, Jena  
 Viola Knop, Frankfurt  
 Veronika Lukacs-Kornek, Homburg  
 Benjamin Maasoumy, Hannover  
 Jochen Mattner, Erlangen  
 Nadja M Meindl-Beinker, Mannheim  
 Ulf P Neumann, Aachen  
 Margarete Odenthal, Cologne  
 Yoshiaki Sunami, Munich

Christoph Roderburg, Aachen  
 Frank Tacke, Aachen  
 Yuchen Xia, Munich



## Greece

Alex P Betrosian, Athens  
 George N Dalekos, Larissa  
 Ioanna K Delladetsima, Athens  
 Nikolaos K Gatselis, Larissa  
 Stavros Gourgiotis, Athens  
 Christos G Savopoulos, Thessaloniki  
 Tania Siahaniidou, Athens  
 Emmanouil Sinakos, Thessaloniki  
 Nikolaos G Symeonidi, Thessaloniki  
 Konstantinos C Thomopoulos, Larissa  
 Konstantinos Tziomalos, Thessaloniki



## Hungary

Gabor Banhegyi, Budapest  
 Peter L Lakatos, Budapest  
 Maria Papp, Debrecen  
 Ferenc Sipos, Budapest  
 Zsolt J Tulassay, Budapest



## India

Deepak N Amarapurkar, Mumbai  
 Girish M Bhopale, Pune  
 Sibnarayan Datta, Tezpur  
 Nutan D Desai, Mumbai  
 Sorabh Kapoor, Mumbai  
 Jaswinder S Maras, New Delhi  
 Nabeen C Nayak, New Delhi  
 C Ganesh Pai, Manipal  
 Amit Pal, Chandigarh  
 K Rajeshwari, New Delhi  
 Anup Ramachandran, Vellore  
 D Nageshwar Reddy, Hyderabad  
 Shivaram P Singh, Cuttack  
 Ajith TA, Thrissur  
 Balasubramaniyan Vairappan, Pondicherry



## Indonesia

Cosmas RA Lesmana, Jakarta  
 Neneng Ratnasari, Yogyakarta



## Iran

Seyed M Jazayeri, Tehran  
 Sedigheh Kafi-Abad, Tehran  
 Iradj Maleki, Sari  
 Fakhraddin Naghibalhossaini, Shiraz



## Israel

Stephen DH Malnick, Rehovot



## Italy

Francesco Angelico, Rome

Alfonso W Avolio, *Rome*  
 Francesco Bellanti, *Foggia*  
 Marcello Bianchini, *Modena*  
 Guglielmo Borgia, *Naples*  
 Mauro Borzio, *Milano*  
 Enrico Brunetti, *Pavia*  
 Valeria Cento, *Roma*  
 Beatrice Conti, *Rome*  
 Francesco D'Amico, *Padova*  
 Samuele De Minicis, *Fermo*  
 Fabrizio De Ponti, *Bologna*  
 Giovan Giuseppe Di Costanzo, *Napoli*  
 Luca Fabris, *Padova*  
 Giovanna Ferraioli, *Pavia*  
 Andrea Galli, *Florence*  
 Matteo Garcovich, *Rome*  
 Edoardo G Giannini, *Genova*  
 Rossano Girometti, *Udine*  
 Alessandro Granito, *Bologna*  
 Alberto Grassi, *Rimini*  
 Alessandro Grasso, *Savona*  
 Salvatore Gruttadauria, *Palermo*  
 Francesca Guerrieri, *Rome*  
 Quirino Lai, *Aquila*  
 Andrea Lisotti, *Bologna*  
 Marcello F Maida, *Palermo*  
 Lucia Malaguarnera, *Catania*  
 Andrea Mancuso, *Palermo*  
 Luca Maroni, *Ancona*  
 Francesco Marotta, *Milano*  
 Pierluigi Marzuillo, *Naples*  
 Sara Montagnese, *Padova*  
 Giuseppe Nigri, *Rome*  
 Claudia Piccoli, *Foggia*  
 Camillo Porta, *Pavia*  
 Chiara Raggi, *Rozzano (MI)*  
 Maria Rendina, *Bari*  
 Maria Ripoli, *San Giovanni Rotondo*  
 Kryssia I Rodriguez-Castro, *Padua*  
 Raffaella Romeo, *Milan*  
 Amedeo Sciarra, *Milano*  
 Antonio Solinas, *Sassari*  
 Aurelio Sonzogni, *Bergamo*  
 Giovanni Squadrito, *Messina*  
 Salvatore Sutti, *Novara*  
 Valentina Svicher, *Rome*  
 Luca Toti, *Rome*  
 Elvira Verduci, *Milan*  
 Umberto Vespasiani-Gentilucci, *Rome*  
 Maria A Zocco, *Rome*



**Japan**

Yasuhiro Asahina, *Tokyo*  
 Nabil AS Eid, *Takatsuki*  
 Kenichi Ikejima, *Tokyo*  
 Shoji Ikuo, *Kobe*  
 Yoshihiro Ikura, *Takatsuki*  
 Shinichi Ikuta, *Nishinomiya*  
 Kazuaki Inoue, *Yokohama*  
 Toshiya Kamiyama, *Sapporo*  
 Takanobu Kato, *Tokyo*  
 Saiho Ko, *Nara*  
 Haruki Komatsu, *Sakura*  
 Masanori Matsuda, *Chuo-city*  
 Yasunobu Matsuda, *Niigata*  
 Yoshifumi Nakayama, *Kitakyushu*  
 Taichiro Nishikawa, *Kyoto*

Satoshi Oeda, *Saga*  
 Kenji Okumura, *Urayasu*  
 Michitaka Ozaki, *Sapporo*  
 Takahiro Sato, *Sapporo*  
 Junichi Shindoh, *Tokyo*  
 Ryo Sudo, *Yokohama*  
 Atsushi Suetsugu, *Gifu*  
 Haruhiko Sugimura, *Hamamatsu*  
 Reiji Sugita, *Sendai*  
 Koichi Takaguchi, *Takamatsu*  
 Shinji Takai, *Takatsuki*  
 Akinobu Takaki, *Okayama*  
 Yasuhito Tanaka, *Nagoya*  
 Takuji Tanaka, *Gifu City*  
 Atsunori Tsuchiya, *Niigata*  
 Koichi Watashi, *Tokyo*  
 Hiroshi Yagi, *Tokyo*  
 Taro Yamashita, *Kanazawa*  
 Shuhei Yoshida, *Chiba*  
 Hitoshi Yoshiji, *Kashiwara*



**Jordan**

Kamal E Bani-Hani, *Zarqa*



**Malaysia**

Peng Soon Koh, *Kuala Lumpur*  
 Yeong Yeh Lee, *Kota Bahru*



**Mexico**

Francisco J Bosques-Padilla, *Monterrey*  
 María de F Higuera-de la Tijera, *Mexico City*  
 José A Morales-Gonzalez, *México City*



**Moldova**

Angela Peltec, *Chishinev*



**Netherlands**

Wybrich R Cnossen, *Nijmegen*  
 Frank G Schaap, *Maastricht*  
 Fareeba Sheedfar, *Groningen*



**Nigeria**

CA Asabamaka Onyekwere, *Lagos*



**Pakistan**

Bikha Ram Devrajani, *Jamshoro*



**Philippines**

Janus P Ong, *Pasig*  
 JD Decena Sollano, *Manila*



**Poland**

Jacek Zielinski, *Gdansk*



**Portugal**

Rui T Marinho, *Lisboa*  
 Joao B Soares, *Braga*



**Qatar**

Reem Al Olaby, *Doha*



**Romania**

Bogdan Dorobantu, *Bucharest*  
 Liana Gheorghe, *Bucharest*  
 George S Gherlan, *Bucharest*  
 Romeo G Mihaila, *Sibiu*  
 Bogdan Procopet, *Cluj-Napoca*  
 Streba T Streba, *Craiova*



**Russia**

Anisa Gumerova, *Kazan*  
 Pavel G Tarazov, *St.Petersburg*



**Saudi Arabia**

Abdulrahman A Aljumah, *Riyadh*  
 Ihab MH Mahmoud, *Riyadh*  
 Ibrahim Masoodi, *Riyadh*  
 Mhoammad K Parvez, *Riyadh*



**Singapore**

Ser Yee Lee, *Singapore*



**South Korea**

Young-Hwa Chung, *Seoul*  
 Dae-Won Jun, *Seoul*  
 Bum-Joon Kim, *Seoul*  
 Do Young Kim, *Seoul*  
 Ji Won Kim, *Seoul*  
 Moon Young Kim, *Wonju*  
 Mi-Kyung Lee, *Suncheon*  
 Kwan-Kyu Park, *Daegu*  
 Young Nyun Park, *Seoul*  
 Jae-Hong Ryoo, *Seoul*  
 Jong Won Yun, *Kyungsan*



**Spain**

Ivan G Marina, *Madrid*  
 Juan G Acevedo, *Barcelona*  
 Javier Ampuero, *Sevilla*  
 Jaime Arias, *Madrid*  
 Andres Cardenas, *Barcelona*  
 Agustin Castiella, *Mendaro*  
 Israel Fernandez-Pineda, *Sevilla*  
 Rocio Gallego-Duran, *Sevilla*  
 Rita Garcia-Martinez, *Barcelona*

José M González-Navajas, *Alicante*  
 Juan C Laguna, *Barcelona*  
 Elba Llop, *Madrid*  
 Laura Ochoa-Callejero, *La Rioja*  
 Albert Pares, *Barcelona*  
 Sonia Ramos, *Madrid*  
 Francisco Rodríguez-Frias, *Córdoba*  
 Manuel L Rodríguez-Peralvarez, *Córdoba*  
 Marta R Romero, *Salamanca*  
 Carlos J Romero, *Madrid*  
 Maria Traperó-Marugán, *Madrid*



#### **Sri Lanka**

Niranga M Devanarayana, *Ragama*



#### **Sudan**

Hatim MY Mudawi, *Khartoum*



#### **Sweden**

Evangelos Kalaitzakis, *Lund*



#### **Switzerland**

Christoph A Maurer, *Liestal*



#### **Thailand**

Taned Chitapanarux, *Chiang mai*  
 Temduang Limpaboon, *Khon Kaen*  
 Sith Phongkitkarun, *Bangkok*  
 Yong Poovorawan, *Bangkok*



#### **Turkey**

Osman Abbasoglu, *Ankara*  
 Mesut Akarsu, *Izmir*  
 Umit Akyuz, *Istanbul*  
 Hakan Alagozlu, *Sivas*  
 Yasemin H Balaban, *Istanbul*  
 Bulent Baran, *Van*  
 Mehmet Celikbilek, *Yozgat*

Levent Doganay, *Istanbul*  
 Fatih Eren, *Istanbul*  
 Abdurrahman Kadayifci, *Gaziantep*  
 Ahmet Karaman, *Kayseri*  
 Muhsin Kaya, *Diyarbakir*  
 Ozgur Kemik, *Van*  
 Serdar Moralioglu, *Uskudar*  
 A Melih Ozel, *Gebze - Kocaeli*  
 Seren Ozenirler, *Ankara*  
 Ali Sazci, *Kocaeli*  
 Goktug Sirin, *Kocaeli*  
 Mustafa Sunbul, *Samsun*  
 Nazan Tuna, *Sakarya*  
 Ozlem Yonem, *Sivas*



#### **Ukraine**

Rostyslav V Bubnov, *Kyiv*  
 Nazarii K Kobylak, *Kyiv*  
 Igor N Skrypnyk, *Poltava*



#### **United Kingdom**

Safa Al-Shamma, *Bournemouth*  
 Jayantha Arnold, *Southall*  
 Marco Carbone, *Cambridge*  
 Rajeev Desai, *Birmingham*  
 Ashwin Dhanda, *Bristol*  
 Matthew Hoare, *Cambridge*  
 Stefan G Hubscher, *Birmingham*  
 Nikolaos Karidis, *London*  
 Lemonica J Koumbi, *London*  
 Patricia Lalor, *Birmingham*  
 Ji-Liang Li, *Oxford*  
 Evaggelia Liaskou, *Birmingham*  
 Rodrigo Liberal, *London*  
 Wei-Yu Lu, *Edinburgh*  
 Richie G Madden, *Truro*  
 Christian P Selinger, *Leeds*  
 Esther Una Cidon, *Bournemouth*



#### **United States**

Naim Alkhouri, *Cleveland*  
 Robert A Anders, *Baltimore*  
 Mohammed Sawkat Anwer, *North Grafton*  
 Kalyan Ram Bhamidimarri, *Miami*

Brian B Borg, *Jackson*  
 Ronald W Busuttil, *Los Angeles*  
 Andres F Carrion, *Miami*  
 Saurabh Chatterjee, *Columbia*  
 Disaya Chavalitdhamrong, *Gainesville*  
 Mark J Czaja, *Bronx*  
 Jonathan M Fenkel, *Philadelphia*  
 Catherine Frenette, *La Jolla*  
 Lorenzo Gallon, *Chicago*  
 Kalpana Ghoshal, *Columbus*  
 Grigoriy E Gurvits, *New York*  
 Hie-Won L Hann, *Philadelphia*  
 Shuang-Teng He, *Kansas City*  
 Wendong Huang, *Duarte*  
 Rachel Hudacko, *Suffern*  
 Lu-Yu Hwang, *Houston*  
 Ijaz S Jamall, *Sacramento*  
 Neil L Julie, *Bethesda*  
 Hetal Karsan, *Atlanta*  
 Ahmed O Kaseb, *Houston*  
 Zeid Kayali, *Pasadena*  
 Kusum K Kharbanda, *Omaha*  
 Timothy R Koch, *Washington*  
 Gursimran S Kochhar, *Cleveland*  
 Steven J Kovacs, *East Hanover*  
 Mary C Kuhns, *Abbott Park*  
 Jiang Liu, *Silver Spring*  
 Li Ma, *Stanford*  
 Francisco Igor Macedo, *Southfield*  
 Sandeep Mukherjee, *Omaha*  
 Natalia A Osna, *Omaha*  
 Jen-Jung Pan, *Houston*  
 Christine Pocha, *Minneapolis*  
 Yury Popov, *Boston*  
 Davide Povero, *La Jolla*  
 Phillip Ruiz, *Miami*  
 Takao Sakai, *Cleveland*  
 Nicola Santoro, *New Haven*  
 Eva Schmelzer, *Pittsburgh*  
 Zhongjie Shi, *Philadelphia*  
 Nathan J Shores, *New Orleans*  
 Siddharth Singh, *Rochester*  
 Veysel Tahan, *Iowa City*  
 Mehlika Toy, *Boston*  
 Hani M Wadei, *Jacksonville*  
 Gulam Waris, *North Chicago*  
 Ruliang Xu, *New York*  
 Jun Xu, *Los Angeles*  
 Matthew M Yeh, *Seattle*  
 Xuchen Zhang, *West Haven*  
 Lixin Zhu, *Buffalo*  
 Sasa Zivkovic, *Pittsburgh*



## Contents

Monthly Volume 6 Number 3 March 27, 2014

**TOPIC HIGHLIGHT** 107 Complications of radiofrequency ablation of hepatic tumors: Frequency and risk factors

*Fonseca AZ, Santin S, Gomes LGL, Waisberg J, Ribeiro Jr. MAF*

**REVIEW** 114 Thyroid hormone analogues and derivatives: Actions in fatty liver  
*Coppola M, Glinni D, Moreno M, Cioffi F, Silvestri E, Goglia F*

**MINIREVIEWS** 130 Management of gastric variceal bleeding: Role of endoscopy and endoscopic ultrasound

*Girotra M, Raghavapuram S, Abraham RR, Pahwa M, Pahwa AR, Rego RF*

137 Role of intrahepatic innervation in regulating the activity of liver cells  
*Streba LAM, Vere CC, Ionescu AG, Streba CT, Rogoveanu I*

144 Hepatoprotective effect of silymarin  
*Vargas-Mendoza N, Madrigal-Santillán E, Morales-González Á, Esquivel-Soto J, Esquivel-Chirino C, García-Luna y González-Rubio M, Gayosso-de-Lucio JA, Morales-González JA*

**BRIEF ARTICLE** 150 Khat (*Catha Edulis*) as a possible cause of autoimmune hepatitis  
*Riyaz S, Imran M, Gleeson D, Karajeh MA*

**CASE REPORT** 155 Nested stromal-epithelial tumour of the liver: An unusual liver entity  
*Procopio F, Di Tommaso L, Armenia S, Quagliuolo V, Roncalli M, Torzilli G*

## Contents

*World Journal of Hepatology*  
Volume 6 Number 3 March 27, 2014

**APPENDIX** I-V Instructions to authors

**ABOUT COVER** Editorial Board Member of *World Journal of Hepatology*, En-Qi Liu, PhD, Director, Professor, Laboratory Animal Center, Xi'an Jiaotong University, Xi'an 710061, Shaanxi Province, China

**AIM AND SCOPE** *World Journal of Hepatology* (*World J Hepatol*, *WJH*, online ISSN 1948-5182, DOI: 10.4254), is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

*WJH* covers topics concerning liver biology/pathology, cirrhosis and its complications, liver fibrosis, liver failure, portal hypertension, hepatitis B and C and inflammatory disorders, steatohepatitis and metabolic liver disease, hepatocellular carcinoma, biliary tract disease, autoimmune disease, cholestatic and biliary disease, transplantation, genetics, epidemiology, microbiology, molecular and cell biology, nutrition, geriatric and pediatric hepatology, diagnosis and screening, endoscopy, imaging, and advanced technology. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of hepatology diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJH*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

**INDEXING/ ABSTRACTING** *World Journal of Hepatology* is now indexed in PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, Directory of Open Access Journals, and Scopus.

**FLYLEAF** I-IV Editorial Board

## EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

Responsible Assistant Editor: *Xiang Li*  
Responsible Electronic Editor: *Dan-Ni Zhang*  
Proofing Editor-in-Chief: *Lian-Sheng Ma*

Responsible Science Editor: *Xiu-Xia Song*

**NAME OF JOURNAL**  
*World Journal of Hepatology*

**ISSN**  
ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

**LAUNCH DATE**  
October 31, 2009

**FREQUENCY**  
Monthly

**EDITORS-IN-CHIEF**  
**Clara Balsano, PhD, Professor**, Departement of Biomedicine, Institute of Molecular Biology and Pathology, Rome 00161, Italy

**Wan-Long Chuang, MD, PhD, Doctor, Professor**, Hepatobiliary Division, Department of Internal Medicine, Kaohsiung Medical University Hospital, Kaohsiung Medical University, Kaohsiung 807, Taiwan

**EDITORIAL OFFICE**  
Jin-Lei Wang, Director

Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director  
*World Journal of Hepatology*  
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,  
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,  
Beijing 100025, China  
Telephone: +86-10-85381891  
Fax: +86-10-85381893  
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com  
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

**PUBLISHER**  
Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited  
Flat C, 23/F, Lucky Plaza,  
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai,  
Hong Kong, China  
Fax: +852-65557188  
Telephone: +852-31779906  
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com  
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

**PUBLICATION DATE**  
March 27, 2014

## COPYRIGHT

© 2014 Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. Articles published by this Open Access journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium, provided the original work is properly cited, the use is non commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license.

## SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

## INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

Full instructions are available online at [http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g\\_info\\_20100316080002.htm](http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100316080002.htm)

**ONLINE SUBMISSION**  
<http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/>

Jaques Waisberg, PhD, Series Editor

## Complications of radiofrequency ablation of hepatic tumors: Frequency and risk factors

Alexandre Zanchenko Fonseca, Stephanie Santin, Luiz Guilherme Lisboa Gomes, Jaques Waisberg, Marcelo Augusto Fontenelle Ribeiro Jr.

Alexandre Zanchenko Fonseca, Stephanie Santin, Marcelo Augusto Fontenelle Ribeiro Jr., Department of General Surgery, University of Santo Amaro, São Paulo, SP CEP 04702-001, Brazil

Luiz Guilherme Lisboa Gomes, Jaques Waisberg, Department of General and Digestive Surgery, ABC Medical School, Santo André, SP 04601-060, Brazil

Author contributions: Santin S and Gomes LGL performed the research; Fonseca AZ, Ribeiro Jr. MAF and Waisberg J wrote the paper.

Correspondence to: Alexandre Zanchenko Fonseca, MD, Department of General Surgery, University of Santo Amaro, Rua Teixeira da Silva, 34 cj 41 - Paraíso, São Paulo, SP CEP 04002030, Brazil. [alexandre.fonseca@einstein.br](mailto:alexandre.fonseca@einstein.br)

Telephone: +55-11-32512469 Fax: +55-11-32846892

Received: October 27, 2013 Revised: December 9, 2013

Accepted: January 15, 2014

Published online: March 27, 2014

ceptible to complications, perform a close post procedure follow-up and manage them early and adequately if they occur. We aim to describe complications from RFA of hepatic tumors and their risk factors, as well as a few techniques to avoid them. This way, others can decrease their morbidity rates with better outcomes.

© 2014 Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. All rights reserved.

**Key words:** Radiofrequency ablation; Hepatic tumors; Complications; Risk factors; Hepatocellular carcinoma

**Core tip:** This article is an interesting and updated compilation of the complications of radiofrequency ablation of liver tumors. Several complications are described, as well as their risk factors and incidence. Some strategies to avoid them from happening are also reported.

### Abstract

Radiofrequency ablation (RFA) has become an important option in the therapy of primary and secondary hepatic tumors. Surgical resection is still the best treatment option, but only a few of these patients are candidates for surgery: multilobar disease, insufficient liver reserve that will lead to liver failure after resection, extra-hepatic disease, proximity to major bile ducts and vessels, and co-morbidities. RFA has a low mortality and morbidity rate and is considered to be safe. Thus, complications occur and vary widely in the literature. Complications are caused by thermal damage, direct needle injury, infection and the patient's co-morbidities. Tumor type, type of approach, number of lesions, tumor localization, underlying hepatic disease, the physician's experience, associated hepatic resection and lesion size have been described as factors significantly associated with complications. The physician in charge should promptly recognize high-risk patients more sus-

Fonseca AZ, Santin S, Gomes LGL, Waisberg J, Ribeiro Jr. MAF. Complications of radiofrequency ablation of hepatic tumors: Frequency and risk factors. *World J Hepatol* 2014; 6(3): 107-113 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v6/i3/107.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v6.i3.107>

### INTRODUCTION

Radiofrequency ablation (RFA) has become an important option in the therapy of primary and secondary hepatic tumors. Surgical resection is still the gold standard treatment, but only 5%-15% of these patients are candidates for surgery<sup>[1]</sup>. For a few selected patients who have hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC), the most common primary cancer, liver transplantation is an option but the inclusion criteria are strict and organ donation is still insufficient. Inadequate liver function, multilobar lesions, extra-hepat-

ic disease, proximity to major hepatic vessels and the biliary tract, and co-morbidities are factors that make these patients not eligible for surgery<sup>[2]</sup>.

Complications rates of RFA vary widely in the literature. They are divided into major and minor<sup>[3]</sup>. The former are those that need some type of medical intervention (*e.g.*, drainage), increase morbidity and mortality, increase hospital stay or require blood transfusions. All of the rest are considered minor<sup>[3]</sup>. Authors have reported rates as low as 2% to 5.7% for major complications<sup>[4-6]</sup>. Mortality related to the procedure is low, reported in the literature to be less than 1%<sup>[7-9]</sup>. Tumor type, type of approach, number of lesions, tumor localization, underlying hepatic disease, the physician's experience, associated hepatic resection and lesion size have been described as factors significantly associated with complications<sup>[9-12]</sup>. In one of their papers, Poon *et al.*<sup>[10]</sup> concluded that after the physician's first 50 procedures, the incidence of complications is lower, as well as a shorter hospital stay and higher complete ablation rate.

In this article, we present the frequency and risk factors for complications after RFA. Complications are summarized in Table 1.

## HEMORRHAGIC COMPLICATIONS

Intra-abdominal bleeding is the most common complication encountered in many studies<sup>[5,6,12,13]</sup>. In Mulier's review, it occurred in 0.7% of the procedures in 3670 patients<sup>[12]</sup>. Similar results were reported by Curley *et al.*<sup>[9]</sup> (0.9% in 608 patients) and Livraghi *et al.*<sup>[6]</sup> (0.5% in 2320 patients). It is believed to be a result of direct trauma from needle positioning rather than thermal injury (due to the protective "heat-sink" effect)<sup>[14,15]</sup>. Injuries to small vessels not visible on ultrasonography (US) are usually responsible for its origin. Increasing abdominal pain following the procedure is generally the most common symptom<sup>[9,15]</sup>. US or computed tomography (CT) confirms the diagnosis. Bleeding complications are more likely to happen in patients with HCC due to their underlying liver disease. In a study addressing this issue, tumor size, low platelet count and tumors located in segment VII were significant risk factors for intra-peritoneal bleeding<sup>[15]</sup>. Intra-hepatic bleeding may also occur and can be prevented by avoiding hepatic vessels while positioning the needle. This makes the imaging guidance essential. Both of them tend to have a benign course and stop spontaneously. Venous bleeding is usually treated conservatively or with blood transfusions only; arterial bleeding is more severe and may require surgical or endovascular intervention<sup>[9,14,16]</sup>. Tract cauterization by the withdrawal of the needle in high temperatures may prevent this kind of complication and should be performed in all cases<sup>[12]</sup>. Groups performing this have less or even no bleeding complications<sup>[7]</sup>. Rhim, in one of his articles, states that the open or the laparoscopic approach can decrease this kind of complication since needle positioning and withdrawal is under direct vision<sup>[16]</sup>. Transcatheter arterial embolization

**Table 1 Complications of radiofrequency ablation**

Hemorrhagic	Intra-abdominal bleeding
	Intra-hepatic bleeding
	Hemothorax
	Hemobilia
	Subcapsular hematoma
	Abdominal wall hematoma
Infection	Hepatic abscess
	Wound infection
	Sepsis
Biliary tract	Bile duct injuries
	Biliary stricture
	Bilomas
	Bilioperitoneum
	Biliopleural fistula
Liver failure	
Pulmonary	Pneumothorax
	Pleural effusion
	Pneumonia
Skin burn	
Tract seeding	
Vascular damage	Portal vein thrombosis
	Hepatic veins thrombosis
	Hepatic artery damage
	Pseudoaneurysm
Visceral damage	Colon
	Stomach
	Gallbladder
	Kidney
	Diaphragm
	Abdominal wall
	Small intestine

is the treatment of choice for this hemorrhagic complication<sup>[9,14,17]</sup>.

Several authors have also described hemothorax<sup>[8,12,15]</sup>. It is less frequent than intra-abdominal bleeding, with an incidence ranging from 0.1% to 0.3%<sup>[8,12,15,17]</sup>. It usually occurs due to injuries to intercostal arteries while percutaneously ablating tumors in the right liver through an intercostal approach. Chest pain and dyspnea are the most common symptoms<sup>[15]</sup>. US, chest CT and chest X-Ray confirm the diagnosis. Circulation stabilization and thoracic drainage are often necessary<sup>[15]</sup>. An open approach for these patients should prevent this from happening.

Another hemorrhagic complication is hemobilia, with an incidence from 0.1% to 0.5%<sup>[12,15]</sup>. It is caused by the puncture at the same time of the biliary tract and a vessel<sup>[15]</sup>. The most common symptoms are abdominal pain, hematemesis and melena. The main risk in these cases is biliary obstruction by blood clots, causing jaundice and liver failure. In this matter, the timing of drainage is essential. Goto *et al.*<sup>[15]</sup> indicates bile duct drainage when bilirubin concentrations exceeds 4 mg/dL; they think that an early indication of the procedure may delay hemostasis. They also found that tumors in liver segment I was a significant risk factor for this type of bleeding. Avoiding puncturing dilated biliary radicles should prevent such complications to occur<sup>[14]</sup>.

Subcapsular hematoma and abdominal wall hematoma have also been described. The first one occurs more often in subcapsular tumors, when tract cauterization is

not possible, due to its depth. The open or laparoscopic approach rather than the percutaneous is an option to avoid them.

This illustrates the need for vigilance for any signs of bleeding after the procedure and adequate screening for coagulation disorders, including the use of medications that affect the coagulation cascade<sup>[18,19]</sup>. Post procedure imaging is also essential since these complications usually occur in the first hours after the ablation.

## INFECTION

Abdominal infection is also a common complication encountered<sup>[12,20]</sup>. This group of complications consists of hepatic abscess, wound infection and sepsis. Hepatic abscess is a potentially dangerous complication with an incidence ranging in the literature from 0.3% to 1.7%<sup>[6,9,11,12,21-23]</sup>. It can appear up to more than 60 d after the procedure<sup>[23]</sup>. Significant risk factors for its development are the presence of biliary abnormality or manipulation, prone to ascending biliary infection (bilioenteric anastomosis, endoscopic papillotomy and tumor with retention of iodized oil from a previous chemoembolization)<sup>[6,12,16,22,24]</sup>. In a study conducted by Elias *et al*<sup>[23]</sup> in 2006, the authors studied 11 patients with enterobiliary anastomosis or biliary stent and found an incidence of 44% of hepatic abscess in these specific subjects. They also stated an interesting issue: when the biliary procedure was synchronous with the RFA, no hepatic abscesses were observed; only when it was performed prior to the ablation was it considered a risk factor. Enteric bacteria coming from the injured colonized bile ducts contaminate the tumor necrosis generated by RFA<sup>[22]</sup>. Patients with hepatic abscess may present with fever and abdominal pain. The onset of these symptoms and signs usually occur within the first month after RFA<sup>[22]</sup>. Suspicion should arise when patients present with high body temperatures after the procedure, especially if it lasts longer than two weeks, although fever can be a symptom of the postablation syndrome. CT scan confirms the diagnosis; air bubbles are usually seen in the abscess. Thus, they may be seen in the ablated area after the procedure and this must not be misdiagnosed as an abscess<sup>[20]</sup>. Antibiotic prophylaxis is controversial in all patients, but in high risk cases it is recommended<sup>[6,12,22,23]</sup>. A question that comes up in these patients is if prolonged antibiotic prophylaxis is useful in reducing its incidence. Hoffmann *et al*<sup>[24]</sup> addressed this issue and tried to reduced this risk by maintaining the antibiotics for over 10 d after the procedure in 8 patients with prior bilioenteric anastomosis. The majority of the interventions (9/10) had prior administration of intravenous piperacillin/tazobactam and after the RFA, patients received Ciprofloxacin orally; 4 of the patients received additional antibiotics (metronidazole, cefpodoxime and cefazolin). Only one patient developed a hepatic abscess; he had a chemoembolization 8 d before the RFA. Despite the low number of patients and the lack of a control group, the authors suggest that this regi-

men may decrease the incidence of hepatic abscess. Elias *et al*<sup>[23]</sup> and de Baère *et al*<sup>[5]</sup> also debated this matter. Both groups administered prolonged antibiotics prophylaxis for 5 d (longer than usual) on these high-risk patients and a high incidence of hepatic abscess was encountered. Further studies with control groups and larger series of patients are necessary to resolve this question.

The most frequent organisms found in these abscesses were *Enterococcus*, *E. coli*, *Bacteroides fragilis*, *E. faecalis*, *C. perfringens* and *Klebsiella pneumoniae*<sup>[5,21,23]</sup>. The best treatment option is percutaneous drainage in combination with systemic antibiotics<sup>[19-21,24]</sup>. Early suspicion, diagnosis and treatment are essential for a good outcome so the physician should be alert to the patient's clinical follow up, especially in those with risk factors.

## BILIARY TRACT DAMAGE

Biliary tract damage includes bile duct injuries, biliary stricture, bilomas and, most rarely, bilioperitoneum and biliopleural fistula. Its incidence can be as low as 0.1% and up to 12%<sup>[9,12,25,26]</sup>. Bile ducts changes are expected and most of these changes have no clinical significance with the patient being asymptomatic with low rates of progression<sup>[9,12,26]</sup>. This explains its low and underestimated frequency since authors ignore those minor changes<sup>[12,26]</sup>. In a paper studying this matter, most of these changes seen on CT were mild dilatation of the upstream intrahepatic bile duct surrounding the ablation zone<sup>[26]</sup>. The authors did not mention the distance between the tumors and major bile ducts and stated that these changes are irreversible. In an Italian study, only two of 3554 patients required therapy after this kind of complication<sup>[6]</sup>. Another 15 patients presented with asymptomatic biliary tree abnormalities. These injuries are due to thermal damage from heating and direct mechanical damage from the needle. It is more likely to happen in hilar tumors or in tumors closer than 1 cm to major bile ducts when the safety margin is impossible to be obtained without injury. Biliary stricture is the most common complication in this group<sup>[12]</sup>. It may develop weeks to several months after RFA<sup>[26]</sup>. In a study where 28 high-risk patients were analyzed, the incidence of stenosis in this specific group of subjects increased up to 46% (13/28 patients with tumors closer than 5 mm to central bile duct on CT)<sup>[25]</sup>. Peripheral stenosis is usually asymptomatic, but central strictures may lead to serious complications. These strictures are believed to lead to liver atrophy and its consequent malfunction<sup>[25]</sup>. This is very important for cirrhotic patients because, due to their already impaired liver function, they may easily develop liver failure and cholangitis after bile duct stenosis<sup>[21,23]</sup>. Cholestasis and biliary infection may also occur.

Diagnosis is usually done by CT during follow-up and can also be detected by endoscopic retrograde cholangiography. The latter can also be used therapeutically by stenting the injured bile duct. The strictures are also well treated by endoscopic sphincterotomy<sup>[27]</sup>.



**Figure 1** Third-degree grounding pad skin burn on the right thigh.

The association of RFA with transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) or percutaneous ethanol injection (PEI) is an option in these cases as these procedures, prior to the RFA, decrease tumor size and makes it possible for the ablation to be safer with a larger margin. Ohnishi *et al*<sup>[25]</sup> reported a method to prevent this complication by infusing intraductal chilled saline solution through an endoscopic nasobiliary drainage tube. Only one patient (2.5%) developed a stricture (left hepatic duct); the 39 remaining subjects were able to avoid thermal injury with this procedure. The incidence of this complication was significantly lower than the control group. This also significantly decreased the worsening of their liver function compared to the control group. The authors did not mention recurrence and other complications related to this procedure. Elias *et al*<sup>[23]</sup> also used this in 13 high-risk patients after the procedure. Two questions arise. The first one is if this protection is due to the low temperature itself or the heat sink effect caused by the solution's flow leading to inefficient ablation. The second one is if this procedure increases the incidence of hepatic abscesses. These questions need to be answered with future studies. Another concern regarding this issue is recurrence. This procedure also has a cooling effect on tumor cells near the cooled bile duct; thus, more insertions and more heat are necessary for adequate ablation which may lead to higher rates of complications<sup>[28]</sup>. Future studies are needed to address this. Curley *et al*<sup>[9]</sup> and Huang *et al*<sup>[29]</sup> suggested an open approach in these high-risk subjects for better needle placement with intra-operative ultrasonography. Patient selection is vital to avoid this type of complication.

Biloma is also encountered in this group of complications, with an incidence ranging from 0.1% to 5.8%<sup>[6,12,26,30]</sup>. It is defined as an encapsulated bile collection outside the biliary tree due to biliary leakage. This leakage can be caused by direct damage from the needle, direct thermal damage and by thermal damage to the microvasculature of the biliary tract caused by RFA. On CT, it is characterized as a circumferential fluid collection surrounding the ablation site or a communication between the bile duct and circumferential collection confirmed on cholangiography or CT<sup>[26,30]</sup>. Most bilomas develop within

the first 4 mo but can occur as late as 17 mo<sup>[30]</sup>. Almost all patients are asymptomatic and the fluid formation has spontaneous regression in half of the cases<sup>[30]</sup>. Percutaneous drainage is a good treatment option when required. Sphincterotomy should always be considered to exclude biliary stenosis and increased biliary pressure as a cause for biloma formation.

## LIVER FAILURE

Liver failure is also a potentially fatal complication, especially in patients with cirrhosis whose liver function is often already impaired. Patients who have undergone previous hepatectomy are also at risk for this complication<sup>[14]</sup>. Its incidence ranges from 0.2% to 4.3%<sup>[4,9,11,12]</sup>. Child Pugh classification has been significantly related to post treatment liver failure<sup>[4,11]</sup>. Hepatic infarction due to injuries to major feeding vessels is believed to be responsible for its occurrence. Proper and careful needle placement is essential to avoid this from happening<sup>[14]</sup>. Other causes of liver failure are extensive ablation (overtreatment causes destruction of cirrhotic tissue around the lesions), portal vein thrombosis and extensive resection<sup>[6,12,16]</sup>.

## PULMONARY COMPLICATIONS

Pneumothorax, hemothorax (described in hemorrhagic complications), pleural effusions and pneumonias are in this group of complications. Its incidence varies from 0.8% to 2.1%<sup>[9,12]</sup>. Pneumothorax is more likely to happen in patients with tumors located directly under the diaphragm when an intercostal approach is chosen<sup>[12]</sup>. Some authors have described the use of artificial pleural effusion<sup>[28]</sup>. The idea is to separate the lung from the diaphragm and avoid these lesions. Inoue *et al*<sup>[28]</sup> published a series of 64 patients with 82 nodules near the diaphragm using this technique and encountered complications in 5 subjects. The treatment should be considered individually. Thoracentesis, underwater seal drainage and diuresis have been described<sup>[6,9,14]</sup>. Adequate needle positioning with a safe window (in the percutaneous approach) can avoid this complication<sup>[20]</sup>. Positioning the patient on the right side can also avoid it by limiting respiratory excursion<sup>[14]</sup>. Use of the epipericardial fat pad has also been described to avoid entering the pleural cavity<sup>[31]</sup>. Further investigation with CT is required if the patient experiences dyspnea or chest pain after RFA.

## SKIN BURNS

Skin burns can occur at the point of needle entry and at the ground pad sites (Figure 1). This complication had a higher incidence in earlier studies due to smaller pads. In recent papers, it became a rarity because of their larger sizes and increased awareness, with a low incidence from 0.2% to 0.6%<sup>[6,14,20]</sup>. Third-degree skin burns are rare, but have been described, even leading to deaths<sup>[5,7,19,20]</sup>. Adequate pad placement and sizes are essential to avoid



**Figure 2** Tumor seeding on needle entry site after percutaneous radiofrequency ablation.

this complication, as well as good contact with the skin. Large and sometimes multiple ground pads are necessary to disperse the high amount of energy generated by RFA. They should be equidistant from the needle due to the asymmetric distribution of the electrical current. This asymmetry makes the temperature beneath the pads not uniform, with greater heat on the edges and in the pads closest to the needle<sup>[19]</sup>. This was confirmed by de Baère *et al*<sup>[5]</sup>, describing patients with first and third degree burns on the edges of one the pads facing the active electrode (needle).

## TRACT SEEDING

Tumor seeding in the needle tract has an incidence from 0.2% to 0.9%<sup>[5,6,12,32]</sup>. Low rates of tumor seeding may be explained due to its underestimation in most papers due to a lack of follow-up. It usually occurs 3 to 12 mo after RFA<sup>[19]</sup>. Viable tumor cells that adhere to a biopsy needle or the electrode during its extraction, tumor cells carried into the needle tract with the bleeding and tumor cells forced into the tract by intratumoral hyperpressure are mechanisms that explain the seeding<sup>[12,33]</sup> (Figure 2). Decreasing the number of punctures and transversing a large amount of hepatic tissue before entering the tumor may avoid this complication<sup>[14,20]</sup>. Groups performing needle tract cauterization have not experienced tumor seeding or have very low rates<sup>[5,7,14]</sup>. Livraghi *et al*<sup>[32]</sup> reported their series with 1314 patients aiming to determine the risks of this complication in subjects with HCC treated by percutaneous RFA with a long follow-up (median 37 mo). They encountered seeding in 12 patients; tumors were located mostly in intercostal muscle and successfully treated by resection. The only significant risk factor described was a previous biopsy. They concluded that needle biopsy should be avoided. Other risks factors described by other authors are poorly differentiated, subcapsular location (where heating of the needle tract is not possible) and multiple needle insertions<sup>[5,6,33,34]</sup>. Optimal and meticulous first attempt electrode positioning is desirable<sup>[6]</sup>. Besides resection, RFA is also an option for treating tumor seeding. Some authors suggest the open

approach in subcapsular lesions to avoid this complication<sup>[35]</sup>.

## HEPATIC VASCULAR DAMAGE

Portal vein thrombosis, hepatic vein thrombosis, hepatic artery damage and pseudoaneurysm represent this group of complications, with an overall complication rate from 0.5% to 1%<sup>[6,12,19,36]</sup>.

Portal vein thrombosis is a potentially fatal complication, with a 0.2% incidence<sup>[12]</sup>. Thrombosis and coagulation of vessels larger than 3 mm are rare when normal flow is granted<sup>[37]</sup>. Most of these thromboses are asymptomatic even in larger vessels and no further therapy is required<sup>[5,36]</sup>. They are caused by heat damage to the endothelial cells of the portal or hepatic vein, leading to platelet aggregation and subsequent thrombosis<sup>[38]</sup>. It can be defined as being adjacent to the ablation zone and developing within 4 mo after RFA<sup>[36]</sup>. Liver function tests are usually normal but if elevated should normalize with no clinical significance<sup>[36]</sup>. Its occurrence should be avoided, especially in cirrhotic patients, as it may lead to liver failure in a patient with an already impaired liver function. Risk factors are the central location of the tumor, vein compression by the tumor and the Pringle maneuver. The latter stops blood flow into the liver and with that, vessels lose their cooling protection from the “heat-sink” effect, leading to vessels thrombosis. de Baère *et al*<sup>[5]</sup> showed in their paper that 30% of their procedures with balloon occlusion (for blood flow stop) led to complete thrombosis of the ballooned vessel. They also had more significant portal vein thrombosis in cirrhotic patients after performing the Pringle maneuver than in noncirrhotic subjects. It is suggested by the authors that it should be avoided in these patients, even for short durations<sup>[5]</sup>.

Hepatic artery damage has a 0.2% incidence<sup>[12]</sup>. Small arteriportal shunts may occur after RFA and the majority of them heal spontaneously<sup>[12]</sup>. They can be successfully treated by endovascular or percutaneous therapies.

## VISCERAL DAMAGE

Visceral damage is rare, with an incidence varying from 0.5% to 0.7%<sup>[6,12]</sup>. Damage to the colon, stomach, gallbladder, kidney, diaphragm, abdominal wall and small intestine has been described. Attention should be paid when tumors are closer than 1 cm to adjacent organs. Early diagnosis and adequate treatment are essential since it may lead to death. Risk factors are percutaneous approach, subcapsular tumors, previous abdominal surgery and chronic cholecystitis as the patient may have adhesions between the liver and the bowel<sup>[6,12,16]</sup>. Livraghi *et al*<sup>[6]</sup> suggest some issues in these patients: they should be treated by the open or laparoscopic approach for direct visualization of the organs, assuring they are in fact separated, and CT guidance is preferable for better adjacent bowel identification.

The colon is believed to be at greater risk of being

damaged due to its thin wall and fixed nature<sup>[5,6]</sup>. This complication has an incidence from 0.1% to 0.3%<sup>[5,6,12]</sup>. Some techniques have been developed to avoid bowel injuries: patient positioning in a steep oblique and prone position and breath holding during mechanical ventilation in patients under general anesthesia has also been described<sup>[14]</sup>. Another technique is creating a barrier between the liver and the colon, the hydrodissection. The use of 5% dextrose and saline solutions has been reported<sup>[14,28,39]</sup>. The former is preferred due to its properties since it does not conduct electricity and hence provides a thermal barrier around the organ<sup>[39]</sup>. Song *et al*<sup>[39]</sup> and Inoue *et al*<sup>[28]</sup> used artificial ascites and had no gastrointestinal injuries. The stomach and small bowel are less injured because adhesions along the gastrohepatic ligament are rare as the gastric wall is very thick and the small bowel has great mobility and peristalsis<sup>[6,19]</sup>. One should keep in mind that the onset of the symptoms of perforation is delayed; therefore, treatment is also usually delayed and the patient presents with a severe clinical status, eventually leading to death. A high level of suspicion is essential and close follow-up is important in these subjects.

Ribeiro *et al*<sup>[7]</sup> in their series routinely performed open cholecystectomy prior to RFA in tumors near the gallbladder, with the intention to avoid cholecystitis and incomplete ablation. Minimal wall thickening is expected on imaging after RFA, usually with no clinical significance. This probably happens due to the capacity of the fluid inside the gallbladder to dissipate the heat<sup>[16]</sup>.

Injury to the diaphragm occurs in 0.1% of the cases<sup>[6,12]</sup>. It frequently results in severe shoulder pain<sup>[14]</sup>. Usually, RFA causes thickening of the muscle but perforation and hernia have been described<sup>[40]</sup>. Artificial ascites can also be used to decrease it.

## CONCLUSION

Complication rates of RFA are low, making it a safe and feasible procedure. Every component of the treatment should be thoroughly analyzed. Proper patient selection is essential; subjects with exclusion criteria may lead to higher complication rates. Type of approach is also vital; depending on tumor location, one type may lead to a higher complication rate than another. This also fits for imaging guidance, where some tumors locations are better visualized by a specific method over another. The physician's experience is very important as well. Identification of high-risk subjects (with close follow-up), early diagnosis of known complications and a high level of suspicion are acquired with time and may lead to better outcomes and reduced risk of complications.

## REFERENCES

- 1 Chaib E, Ribeiro Jr. MAF, Saad WA. Epidemiologia e Fatores de Risco. In: Carcinoma Hepatocelular: dos fatores de risco ao tratamento. São Paulo: Editora Atheneu, 2004: 5-16
- 2 McGrane S, McSweeney SE, Maher MM. Which patients will benefit from percutaneous radiofrequency ablation of colorectal liver metastases? Critically appraised topic. *Abdom Imaging* 2008; **33**: 48-53 [PMID: 17874263 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-007-9313-2]
- 3 Goldberg SN, Grassi CJ, Cardella JF, Charboneau JW, Dodd GD, Dupuy DE, Gervais D, Gillams AR, Kane RA, Lee FT, Livraghi T, McGahan J, Phillips DA, Rhim H, Silverman SG. Image-guided tumor ablation: standardization of terminology and reporting criteria. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2005; **16**: 765-778 [PMID: 15947040 DOI: 10.1097/01.RVI.0000170858.46668.65]
- 4 Chen TM, Huang PT, Lin LF, Tung JN. Major complications of ultrasound-guided percutaneous radiofrequency ablations for liver malignancies: single center experience. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23**: e445-e450 [PMID: 17683478 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2007.05078.x]
- 5 de Baère T, Risse O, Kuoch V, Dromain C, Sengel C, Smayra T, Gamal El Din M, Letoublon C, Elias D. Adverse events during radiofrequency treatment of 582 hepatic tumors. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2003; **181**: 695-700 [PMID: 12933462 DOI: 10.2214/ajr.181.3.1810695]
- 6 Livraghi T, Solbiati L, Meloni MF, Gazelle GS, Halpern EF, Goldberg SN. Treatment of focal liver tumors with percutaneous radio-frequency ablation: complications encountered in a multicenter study. *Radiology* 2003; **226**: 441-451 [PMID: 12563138 DOI: 10.1148/radiol.2262012198]
- 7 Ribeiro MA, Rodrigues JJ, Habr-Gama A, Chaib E, D'Ipolitto G, Fonseca AZ, Saad WA, Saad WA. Radiofrequency ablation of primary and metastatic liver tumors—4 years experience. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2007; **54**: 1170-1175 [PMID: 17629064]
- 8 Kasugai H, Osaki Y, Oka H, Kudo M, Seki T. Severe complications of radiofrequency ablation therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma: an analysis of 3,891 ablations in 2,614 patients. *Oncology* 2007; **72** Suppl 1: 72-75 [PMID: 18087185 DOI: 10.1159/000111710]
- 9 Curley SA, Marra P, Beaty K, Ellis LM, Vauthey JN, Abdalla EK, Scaife C, Raut C, Wolff R, Choi H, Loyer E, Vallone P, Fiore F, Scordino F, De Rosa V, Orlando R, Pignata S, Daniele B, Izzo F. Early and late complications after radiofrequency ablation of malignant liver tumors in 608 patients. *Ann Surg* 2004; **239**: 450-458 [PMID: 15024305 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000118373.31781.f2]
- 10 Poon RT, Ng KK, Lam CM, Ai V, Yuen J, Fan ST, Wong J. Learning curve for radiofrequency ablation of liver tumors: prospective analysis of initial 100 patients in a tertiary institution. *Ann Surg* 2004; **239**: 441-449 [PMID: 15024304 DOI: 10.1097/01.sla.0000118565.21298.0a]
- 11 Kong WT, Zhang WW, Qiu YD, Zhou T, Qiu JL, Zhang W, Ding YT. Major complications after radiofrequency ablation for liver tumors: analysis of 255 patients. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 2651-2656 [PMID: 19496197 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.2651]
- 12 Mulier S, Mulier P, Ni Y, Miao Y, Dupas B, Marchal G, De Wever I, Michel L. Complications of radiofrequency coagulation of liver tumours. *Br J Surg* 2002; **89**: 1206-1222 [PMID: 12296886 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2168.2002.02168.x]
- 13 Rhim H, Lim HK, Kim YS, Choi D, Lee WJ. Radiofrequency ablation of hepatic tumors: lessons learned from 3000 procedures. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23**: 1492-1500 [PMID: 18713294 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2008.05550.x]
- 14 Mendiratta-Lala M, Brook OR, Midkiff BD, Brennan DD, Thornton E, Faintuch S, Sheiman RG, Goldberg SN. Quality initiatives: strategies for anticipating and reducing complications and treatment failures in hepatic radiofrequency ablation. *Radiographics* 2010; **30**: 1107-1122 [PMID: 20442337 DOI: 10.1148/rg.304095202]
- 15 Goto E, Tateishi R, Shiina S, Masuzaki R, Enooku K, Sato T, Ohki T, Kondo Y, Goto T, Yoshida H, Omata M. Hemorrhagic complications of percutaneous radiofrequency ablation for liver tumors. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2010; **44**: 374-380 [PMID: 19809357 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3181b7ed76]

- 16 **Rhim H.** Complications of radiofrequency ablation in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Abdom Imaging* 2005; **30**: 409-418 [PMID: 15688113 DOI: 10.1007/s00261-004-0255-7]
- 17 **Koda M,** Murawaki Y, Hirooka Y, Kitamoto M, Ono M, Sakaeda H, Joko K, Sato S, Tamaki K, Yamasaki T, Shibata H, Shimoe T, Matsuda T, Toshikuni N, Fujioka S, Ohmoto K, Nakamura S, Kariyama K, Aikata H, Kobayashi Y, Tsutsui A. Complications of radiofrequency ablation for hepatocellular carcinoma 283 346 treated nodules in 13 in a multicenter study: An analysis of 16 patients. *Hepatol Res* 2012; **42**: 1058-1064 [PMID: 22583706 DOI: 10.1111/j.1872-034X.2012.01025.x]
- 18 **Nemcek AA.** Complications of radiofrequency ablation of neoplasms. *Semin Intervent Radiol* 2006; **23**: 177-187 [PMID: 21326761 DOI: 10.1055/s-2006-941448]
- 19 **Rhim H,** Dodd GD, Chintapalli KN, Wood BJ, Dupuy DE, Hvizda JL, Sewell PE, Goldberg SN. Radiofrequency thermal ablation of abdominal tumors: lessons learned from complications. *Radiographics* 2004; **24**: 41-52 [PMID: 14730035 DOI: 10.1148/rg.241025144]
- 20 **Rhim H,** Yoon KH, Lee JM, Cho Y, Cho JS, Kim SH, Lee WJ, Lim HK, Nam GJ, Han SS, Kim YH, Park CM, Kim PN, Byun JY. Major complications after radio-frequency thermal ablation of hepatic tumors: spectrum of imaging findings. *Radiographics* 2003; **23**: 123-134; discussion 134-136 [PMID: 12533647 DOI: 10.1148/rg.231025054]
- 21 **Shibata T,** Yamamoto Y, Yamamoto N, Maetani Y, Shibata T, Ikai I, Terajima H, Hatano E, Kubo T, Itoh K, Hiraoka M. Cholangitis and liver abscess after percutaneous ablation therapy for liver tumors: incidence and risk factors. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2003; **14**: 1535-1542 [PMID: 14654488 DOI: 10.1097/01.RVI.0000099532.29957.4F]
- 22 **Choi D,** Lim HK, Kim MJ, Kim SJ, Kim SH, Lee WJ, Lim JH, Paik SW, Yoo BC, Choi MS, Kim S. Liver abscess after percutaneous radiofrequency ablation for hepatocellular carcinomas: frequency and risk factors. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2005; **184**: 1860-1867 [PMID: 15908543 DOI: 10.2214/ajr.184.6.01841860]
- 23 **Elias D,** Di Pietroantonio D, Gachot B, Menegon P, Hakime A, De Baere T. Liver abscess after radiofrequency ablation of tumors in patients with a biliary tract procedure. *Gastroenterol Clin Biol* 2006; **30**: 823-827 [PMID: 16885864 DOI: 10.1016/S0399-8320(06)73327-9]
- 24 **Hoffmann R,** Rempp H, Schmidt D, Pereira PL, Claussen CD, Clasen S. Prolonged antibiotic prophylaxis in patients with bilioenteric anastomosis undergoing percutaneous radiofrequency ablation. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2012; **23**: 545-551 [PMID: 22365593 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvir.2011.12.025]
- 25 **Ohnishi T,** Yasuda I, Nishigaki Y, Hayashi H, Otsuji K, Mukai T, Enya M, Omar S, Soehendra N, Tomita E, Moriwaki H. Intraductal chilled saline perfusion to prevent bile duct injury during percutaneous radiofrequency ablation for hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23**: e410-e415 [PMID: 17683503 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2007.05091.x]
- 26 **Kim SH,** Lim HK, Choi D, Lee WJ, Kim SH, Kim MJ, Lee SJ, Lim JH. Changes in bile ducts after radiofrequency ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma: frequency and clinical significance. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2004; **183**: 1611-1617 [PMID: 15547200 DOI: 10.2214/ajr.183.6.01831611]
- 27 **Razafindratsira T,** Isambert M, Evrard S. Complications of intraoperative radiofrequency ablation of liver metastases. *HPB (Oxford)* 2011; **13**: 15-23 [PMID: 21159099 DOI: 10.1111/j.1477-2574.2010.00243.x]
- 28 **Inoue T,** Minami Y, Chung H, Hayaishi S, Ueda T, Tatsumi C, Takita M, Kitai S, Hatanaka K, Ishikawa E, Yada N, Hagiwara S, Ueshima K, Kudo M. Radiofrequency ablation for hepatocellular carcinoma: assistant techniques for difficult cases. *Oncology* 2010; **78** Suppl 1: 94-101 [PMID: 20616590 DOI: 10.1159/000315236]
- 29 **Huang JW,** Hernandez-Alejandro R, Croome KP, Yan LN, Wu H, Chen ZY, Prasoon P, Zeng Y. Surgical vs percutaneous radiofrequency ablation for hepatocellular carcinoma in dangerous locations. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 123-129 [PMID: 21218093 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i1.123]
- 30 **Chang IS,** Rhim H, Kim SH, Kim YS, Choi D, Park Y, Lim HK. Biloma formation after radiofrequency ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma: incidence, imaging features, and clinical significance. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2010; **195**: 1131-1136 [PMID: 20966318 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.09.3946]
- 31 **Brennan DD,** Ganguli S, Brecher CW, Goldberg SN. Thinking outside the abdominal box: safe use of the epipericardial fat pad window for percutaneous radiofrequency ablation of hepatic dome tumors. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2008; **19**: 133-136 [PMID: 18192479 DOI: 10.1016/j.jvir.2007.08.023]
- 32 **Livraghi T,** Lazzaroni S, Meloni F, Solbiati L. Risk of tumour seeding after percutaneous radiofrequency ablation for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Br J Surg* 2005; **92**: 856-858 [PMID: 15892154 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.4986]
- 33 **Llovet JM,** Vilana R, Brú C, Bianchi L, Salmeron JM, Boix L, Ganaou S, Sala M, Pagès M, Ayuso C, Solé M, Rodés J, Bruix J. Increased risk of tumor seeding after percutaneous radiofrequency ablation for single hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 1124-1129 [PMID: 11343240 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2001.24233]
- 34 **Jaskolka JD,** Asch MR, Kachura JR, Ho CS, Ossip M, Wong F, Sherman M, Grant DR, Greig PD, Gallinger S. Needle tract seeding after radiofrequency ablation of hepatic tumors. *J Vasc Interv Radiol* 2005; **16**: 485-491 [PMID: 15802448 DOI: 10.1097/01.RVI.0000151141.09597.5F]
- 35 **Latteri F,** Sandonato L, Di Marco V, Parisi P, Cabibbo G, Lombardo G, Galia M, Midiri M, Latteri MA, Craxi A. Seeding after radiofrequency ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with cirrhosis: a prospective study. *Dig Liver Dis* 2008; **40**: 684-689 [PMID: 18294940 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2007.12.021]
- 36 **Kim AY,** Rhim H, Park M, Lee MW, Kim YS, Choi D, Lim HK. Venous thrombosis after radiofrequency ablation for hepatocellular carcinoma. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2011; **197**: 1474-1480 [PMID: 22109305 DOI: 10.2214/AJR.11.6495]
- 37 **Lu DS,** Raman SS, Vodopich DJ, Wang M, Sayre J, Lassman C. Effect of vessel size on creation of hepatic radiofrequency lesions in pigs: assessment of the "heat sink" effect. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2002; **178**: 47-51 [PMID: 11756085 DOI: 10.2214/ajr.178.1.1780047]
- 38 **Ng KK,** Lam CM, Poon RT, Shek TW, Fan ST, Wong J. Delayed portal vein thrombosis after experimental radiofrequency ablation near the main portal vein. *Br J Surg* 2004; **91**: 632-639 [PMID: 15122617 DOI: 10.1002/bjs.4500]
- 39 **Song I,** Rhim H, Lim HK, Kim YS, Choi D. Percutaneous radiofrequency ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma abutting the diaphragm and gastrointestinal tracts with the use of artificial ascites: safety and technical efficacy in 143 patients. *Eur Radiol* 2009; **19**: 2630-2640 [PMID: 19557416 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-009-1463-x]
- 40 **Koda M,** Ueki M, Maeda N, Murawaki Y. Diaphragmatic perforation and hernia after hepatic radiofrequency ablation. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 2003; **180**: 1561-1562 [PMID: 12760919 DOI: 10.2214/ajr.180.6.1801561]

P- Reviewers: Chetty R, Ramani K S- Editor: Wen LL

L- Editor: Roemmele A E- Editor: Zhang DN



## Thyroid hormone analogues and derivatives: Actions in fatty liver

Maria Coppola, Daniela Glinni, Maria Moreno, Federica Cioffi, Elena Silvestri, Fernando Goglia

Maria Coppola, Daniela Glinni, Maria Moreno, Federica Cioffi, Elena Silvestri, Fernando Goglia, Department of Science and Technologies, University of Sannio, 82100 Benevento, Italy  
Author contributions: Coppola M and Glinni D contributed equally to this work; Coppola M wrote the paragraph: Naturally occurring iodothyronines and liver steatosis: 3,5-T<sub>2</sub>; Glinni D wrote the paragraph: Actions of T<sub>3</sub> on lipid metabolism in the liver: implications for fatty liver; Moreno M wrote the paragraphs: Introduction and Conclusions; Cioffi F wrote the paragraph: Thyroid hormone functional analogues: TRC150094 (TRC); Silvestri E wrote the paragraph: Thyromimetics and liver steatosis and realized the figures; Goglia F coordinated all the work and revised all the manuscript.

Correspondence to: Fernando Goglia, Professor of Physiology, Head of Department of Science and Technologies, University of Sannio, Via Port'Arsa 11, 82100 Benevento, Italy. [goglia@unisannio.it](mailto:goglia@unisannio.it)

Telephone: +39-0824-305100 Fax: +39-0824-305142

Received: October 30, 2013 Revised: December 10, 2013

Accepted: February 16, 2014

Published online: March 27, 2014

### Abstract

Fatty liver or nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD), a problem of increasing clinical significance and prevalence worldwide, is associated with increased risk for the development of cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Although several therapeutic approaches can be used in the context of NAFLD, dietary and physical activities are still the most frequently used strategies. Some pharmacological agents show promising results although no conclusions can be drawn from recent clinical trials. Thyroid hormones [THs; thyroxine (T<sub>4</sub>) and 3,3',5-triiodo-L-thyronine (T<sub>3</sub>)] coordinate a diverse array of physiological events during development and lipid/energy homeostasis and have some potentially therapeutic actions which include inducing weight loss, and lowering plasma cholesterol levels and tissue adiposity. The thyroid hormones exert their physiological effects by binding to specific nuclear receptors [thyroid hormone receptors (TR)] of which the TR $\beta$  isoform is liver specific and has been considered a putative tar-

get for the treatment of dyslipidemia and fatty liver. In view of this, the aim of the review is (1) to provide an overview of the action of T<sub>3</sub> on lipid metabolism with implications for liver steatosis and (2) to provide an update on the current knowledge concerning the administration of TR $\beta$  selective thyromimetics (GC-1 and MB07811), as well as of 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine and its novel functional analogue TRC150094 in animal models of overweight and related disorders including primarily fatty liver.

© 2014 Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. All rights reserved.

**Key words:** Fatty liver; Thyroid hormones; Thyromimetics; 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine; Lipid metabolism

**Core tip:** Fatty liver is associated with increased risk for the development of cirrhosis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Thyroid hormones have some potentially therapeutic actions by binding to specific nuclear receptors [thyroid hormone receptors (TR)] of which the TR $\beta$  isoform is liver specific and a putative target for the treatment of dyslipidemia and fatty liver. This review provides (1) an overview of the action of T<sub>3</sub> on lipid metabolism and (2) an update concerning the administration of TR $\beta$  selective thyromimetics (GC-1 and MB07811), as well as of 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine and its novel functional analogue TRC150094 in animal models of overweight and fatty liver.

Coppola M, Glinni D, Moreno M, Cioffi F, Silvestri E, Goglia F. Thyroid hormone analogues and derivatives: Actions in fatty liver. *World J Hepatol* 2014; 6(3): 114-129 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v6/i3/114.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v6.i3.114>

### INTRODUCTION

The liver plays essential roles in supporting many meta-

bolic processes and is critically involved in facilitating the maintenance of blood-glucose levels and energy homeostasis. Diet-induced obesity - commonly associated with diseases such as type 2 diabetes (T2DM), hypertension, heart failure, or cancer - also leads to fatty liver or steatosis, a histopathological condition characterized by an excess accumulation within hepatocytes of lipids, which are primarily triglycerides (TGs)<sup>[1]</sup>. Although the primary metabolic abnormalities leading to lipid accumulation within hepatocytes are still not fully understood, a decreased capacity to oxidize fatty acids, an increased delivery and transport of free fatty acids (FFAs) into the liver as well as an augmented hepatic fatty acid synthesis are likely to play significant roles in the pathogenesis of hepatic steatosis<sup>[2-4]</sup>. Moreover, steatosis is clearly, inextricably linked to modifications of mitochondrial functions<sup>[5,6]</sup>. Indeed, the mitochondrion plays an important role in the hepatocyte's metabolism because it is the primary site of fatty acid oxidation and oxidative phosphorylation. Multiple enzymes are involved in mitochondrial  $\beta$ -oxidation, and even partial deficiencies of these enzymes may lead to the development of hepatic steatosis<sup>[7,8]</sup> (Figure 1A). Two broad categories of hepatic steatosis have been recognized: alcoholic fatty liver disease (AFLD) and nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (NAFLD). In particular, NAFLD, commonly associated with insulin resistance (IR) and cardiovascular diseases<sup>[9]</sup>, comprises a morphological spectrum of liver lesions ranging from simple triglyceride accumulation in hepatocytes (hepatic steatosis) to inflammatory and hepatocellular ballooning injury (non-alcoholic steatohepatitis; NASH), which eventually leads to fibrosis and cirrhosis<sup>[1]</sup>. The exact mechanism underlying the transition from steatosis to steatohepatitis is still unknown. According to the "two-hit" hypothesis<sup>[10]</sup>, the first hit involves the accumulation of TGs in hepatocytes that causes a vicious cycle of metabolic dysfunction; once the presence of hepatic steatosis is established, progression to steatohepatitis involves a "second hit" with oxidative stress playing a key role. Fatty liver is more susceptible to oxidative injury<sup>[1]</sup> and lipid peroxidation<sup>[11]</sup>, and the chemical modification of biological molecules may be directly toxic to the cells or may stimulate host-immune response that leads to inflammation, collagen production and further disease progression<sup>[12-14]</sup>.

Therapeutic interventions in NAFLD are mainly based on lifestyle changes, including diet and exercise<sup>[15,16]</sup>. Currently, there are no approved pharmacological therapies for NAFLD, but because IR is almost universally present in patients with this condition, drugs that increase insulin sensitivity are currently undergoing extensive evaluation and hold promise as therapeutically effective agents<sup>[17,18]</sup>. Several other agents, such as antioxidants and hepatoprotective compounds, have been evaluated, and the data was inconclusive or demonstrated no effects<sup>[16]</sup>.

Thyroid hormones [THs; thyroxine (T4) and 3,3',5-triiodo-L-thyronine (T3)] exert a multiplicity of effects and are potent regulators of glucose and lipid metabolism and body weight. In particular, they play an important role in

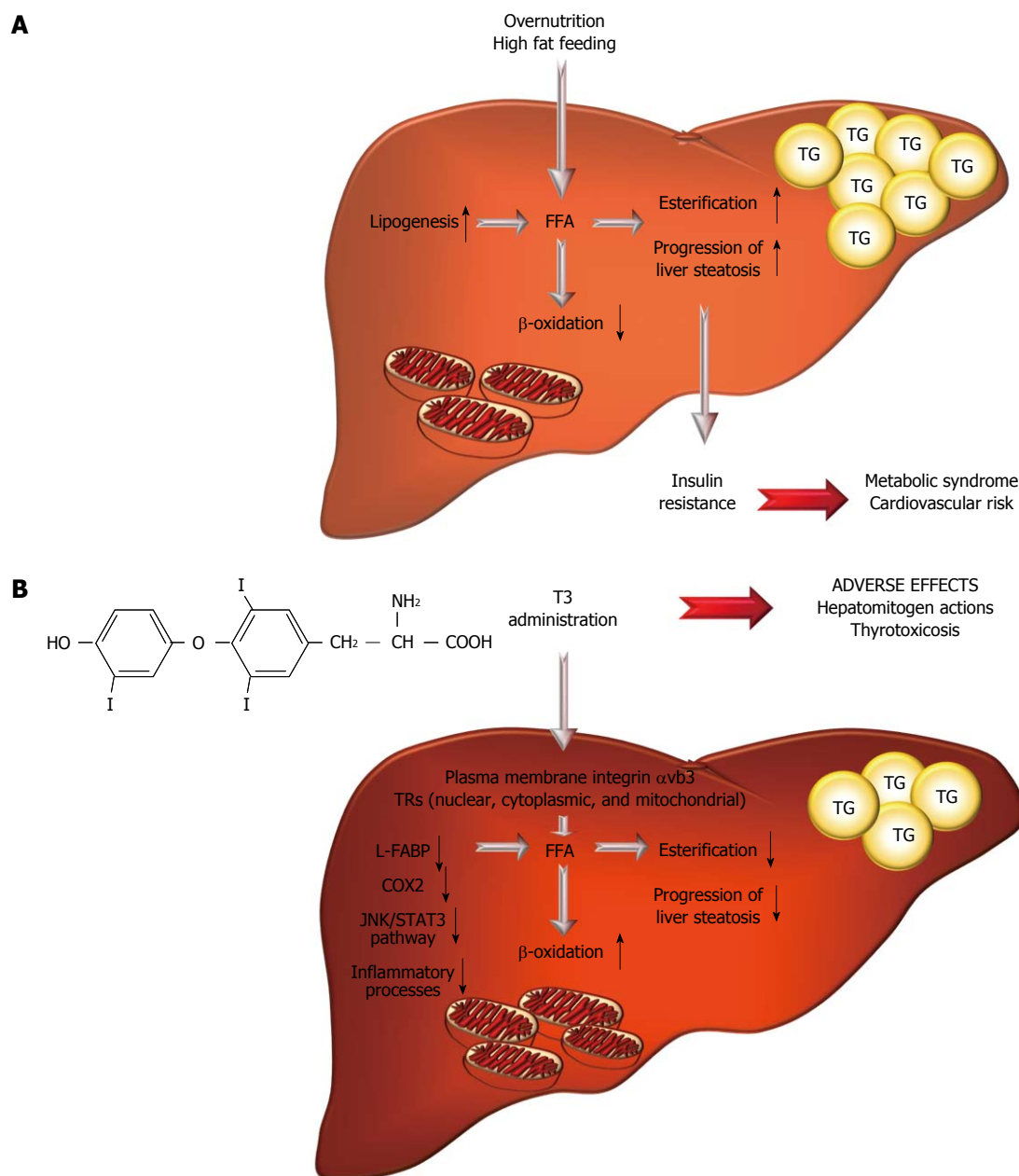
hepatic lipid homeostasis. They exert their physiological effects by binding to specific nuclear receptors, the thyroid hormone receptors (TR)  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  that are widely distributed throughout the body. The  $\beta$  isoform is the major TR expressed in the liver. The beneficial effects of TR $\beta$  activation include lowering low-density lipoprotein (LDL) cholesterol, reducing whole body adiposity and weight<sup>[19]</sup>, and increasing the metabolic rate in the liver which could potentially lead to reduced lipid content. However, to date, there is a lack of data available on the specific effects elicited by T3 on liver steatosis. In a recent study, T3 was shown to exert a strong inhibitory effect on the development of steatosis and to cause a rapid regression of fully established steatosis<sup>[20]</sup>.

An excess of thyroid hormone is associated with unwanted effects particularly on the heart (including tachycardia and sudden death) and also on bone and skeletal muscle<sup>[21]</sup>. Because of these adverse effects of THs, several new TH analogs (generically termed as thyromimetics) have recently been developed to generate effective and safe treatments to counteract obesity and related disorders among which hyperlipidemia and liver steatosis. These either have selective effects on the liver *vs* the heart or bind selectively to TR $\beta$  rather than to TR $\alpha$  without cardiac side effects<sup>[22]</sup>. Such compounds could serve as powerful new tools to address some of the largest medical problems in developed countries-obesity and related disorders<sup>[23]</sup>. Interestingly, THs also exert non-genomic effects<sup>[24]</sup> and some are attributable to naturally occurring iodothyronines apart from T4 and T3<sup>[25,26]</sup>. These THs derivatives are currently being studied to elucidate their potential biological activities and application as anti-hyperlipidemic as well as anti-steatotic agents<sup>[22]</sup>.

This review, including T3 action in the liver and fatty liver, will focus on the current understanding of the actions of thyroid hormone analogues and derivatives in fatty liver in view of the development of potential future therapeutic approaches for the prevention or counteraction of liver steatosis.

## ACTIONS OF T3 ON LIPID METABOLISM IN THE LIVER: IMPLICATIONS FOR FATTY LIVER

The pleiotropic effects exerted by T3 includes the maintenance of lipid homeostasis *via* regulation of gene expression in target organs such as liver and adipose tissues. Most T3 effects are mediated by the canonical, or classic, pathway which requires the nuclear T3 receptors<sup>[27-29]</sup>. Actually, T3 can also signal through non canonical pathways by binding to cytoplasmic or mitochondrial TR isoforms<sup>[24]</sup>. In mammals, two distinct genes express the TR $\alpha$  and TR $\beta$  isoforms. The TR $\beta$  gene encodes three T3-binding TR $\beta$  isoforms ( $\beta$ 1,  $\beta$ 2, and  $\beta$ 3) that share high sequence homology in the DNA and T3-binding domains but differ in length and amino acid sequences in the amino-terminal A/B domain. The TR $\alpha$  gene en-



**Figure 1** Hepatic lipid partitioning and liver and systemic metabolic damages in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease (A) and a schematic representation of the anti-steatotic effect of 3,3',5-triiodo-L-thyronine (B). A: Hepatic lipid partitioning and liver and systemic metabolic damages in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. Chronic overnutrition/hyperlipidemic feeding causes fat retention in hepatocytes that, in turn, results in alteration of fat uptake, de novo synthesis (lipogenesis) and oxidation with a significant imbalance of lipid homeostasis. This can subsequently induce insulin-resistance, metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular diseases; B: A schematic representation of the anti-steatotic effect of T3: An update. T3-administration associated adverse effects are also highlighted (for details see the text). T3: 3,3',5-triiodo-L-thyronine; TRs: Thyroid hormone receptor isoforms; FFA: Free fatty acid; TG: Triglyceride; L-FABP: Liver-type fatty acid-binding protein; COX2: Cyclooxygenase 2; JNK: c-Jun N-terminal kinases; STAT3: Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3.

codes one T3-high affinity binding TR $\alpha$ 1 and two splice variants (TR $\alpha$ 2 and TR $\alpha$ 3) which differ from TR $\alpha$ 1 in length and amino acid sequences in the C-terminal region starting at amino acid 370, and they have no T3-binding activity<sup>[30]</sup>. While TR $\alpha$ 1 is preferentially expressed in the heart, TR $\beta$ 1 is the major isoform in the liver, kidney and thyroid. However, TR $\beta$ 2 is predominantly expressed in the brain, adipose tissue and anterior pituitary gland. The liver is an important T3 target tissue<sup>[31]</sup>. T3 increases the expression of several genes involved in hepatic lipogenesis including fatty acid synthase (FAS), hepatic product

spot 14 (which interacts physically and functionally with the TR to regulate malic enzyme gene expression<sup>[32]</sup>), acyl-CoA synthetase 5, fatty acid transporter protein, malic enzyme, glucose-6-P dehydrogenase (G6PDH)<sup>[33]</sup>, sterol regulatory element binding protein-1c (SREBP-1c)<sup>[34]</sup>. T3 also induces genes involved in fatty acid oxidation, such as fatty acid transporter (FAT), fatty acid-binding protein (FABP), lipoprotein lipase (LPL)<sup>[33]</sup>, and carnitine palmitoyltransferase-1alpha (CPT-1 $\alpha$ ), a key rate-limiting enzyme in mitochondrial fatty acid oxidation. In the liver, many of these genes (*e.g.*, malic enzyme, SREBP-1c, FAS

and CPT-1 $\alpha$ ) are directly regulated by T3/TR as the thyroid hormone response elements (TREs) have been reported in their promoters<sup>[34,35]</sup>. Importantly, T3 transcriptional activity also depends on several other factors including the type of TREs located on the promoters of target genes, the developmental- and tissue-dependent expression of TR isoforms, and a number of nuclear co-regulatory proteins. TRs bind to TREs not only as homodimers but also as heterodimers with other members of the receptor superfamily, such as retinoic X receptors (RXRs), vitamin D receptor, and all subtypes of the retinoic acid receptors. Heterodimerization with RXR dramatically increases the binding of TRs to TREs, the responsiveness of TR to T3, transcriptional activation<sup>[30]</sup> and, due to promiscuity of RXR in heterodimerization with many members of the receptor superfamily, allows TR to crosstalk with other receptors. Crosstalk with peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor (PPAR) signaling *via* heterodimerization with RXR by TR is a well-known example<sup>[30,36]</sup>.

Moreover, in the liver, activation of the NAD<sup>+</sup>-dependent deacetylase sirtuin 1 (SIRT1) facilitates fatty acid oxidation<sup>[37]</sup>. Indeed, in hepatocytes isolated from mice lacking SIRT1, fatty acid oxidation rates are reduced, and these mice accumulate lipids within the liver<sup>[38]</sup>. Recently, SIRT1 has been reported to interact directly with TR $\beta$ 1, contributing to the T3-mediated stimulation of hepatic genes *via* the activation of several factors such as PPAR $\alpha$ , estrogen-related receptor  $\alpha$  (ERR- $\alpha$ ), and peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor  $\gamma$  coactivator (PGC-1 $\alpha$ )<sup>[39]</sup>. In the liver, PGC-1 $\alpha$  promotes expression of genes involved in hepatic fatty acid oxidation<sup>[40]</sup> and drives the expression of genes involved in hepatic gluconeogenesis *via* interactions with HNF4 $\alpha$  (hepatic nuclear factor-4) and FoxO1 (forkhead transcription factor)<sup>[41,42]</sup>. In particular, PGC-1 $\alpha$  appears to be another key player in T3-signaling as it is able to coactivate the TR $\beta$ <sup>[43]</sup> and its overexpression enhances the induction T3-mediated of CPT-1 $\alpha$ <sup>[44]</sup> and PDK4 (pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase, isozyme 4)<sup>[45,46]</sup>. Interestingly, T3 can also signal in a TR $\beta$ -independent manner by binding to surface receptor such as integrin  $\alpha$ v $\beta$ 3 receptor, thus activating the MAPK/ERK and PI3K/Akt/mTOR-C1 pathways<sup>[24]</sup>. Recent studies have highlighted that such effects in hepatocytes have the potential to modulate lipogenesis and cholesterologenesis<sup>[47]</sup>.

Normal serum THs levels are essential for the maintenance of a sufficient pool of cholesterol to meet the body's requirements and to regulate the critical steps of cholesterol synthesis, uptake and metabolism<sup>[19]</sup>. T3 signaling: (1) stimulates 3-hydroxy-3-methyl-glutaryl coenzyme A (HMG CoA) reductase and farnesyl pyrophosphate (FPP), favoring cholesterol synthesis; (2) up-regulates the LDL receptor (LDLR; low density lipoprotein receptor), increasing cholesterol uptake; and (3) stimulates cholesterol 7 $\alpha$ -hydroxylase (CYP7A1), enhancing the metabolism of cholesterol into bile acids<sup>[48-50]</sup>.

Although the T3-mediated actions involved in the

regulation of serum lipid homeostasis as well as in hepatic fat metabolism are quite well established, the T3-specific effects on NAFLD are still not fully elucidated. A study using a nutritional model of NAFLD [treating rats with high-fat choline-methionine deficient (CMD) diet] revealed that co-feeding T3 (4 mg/kg of diet) with a CMD diet exerts a strong inhibitory effect on the development of steatosis. Indeed, T3 prevents accumulation of TGs by inducing fatty acid oxidation with subsequent impairment of TGs hepatic synthesis/accumulation, and decreases the expression of liver-type fatty acid-binding protein (L-FABP), an abundant protein in the cytosol of hepatocytes that facilitates fatty acid transport and utilization<sup>[20]</sup>. Furthermore, the same study showed that T3 administration for only 1 wk, following 10 wk on a CMD diet, caused a rapid regression of fully established steatosis by: (1) dramatically reducing liver TGs levels and cyclooxygenase 2 (COX2) expression; (2) down-regulating pathways, such as JNK (c-Jun N-terminal kinase) and STAT3 (signal transducer and activator of transcription 3) pathways, usually activated in inflammatory processes; and (3) reducing the severity of liver injury as determined by serum levels of transaminases (AST and ALT; aspartate aminotransferase and alanine aminotransferase)<sup>[20]</sup> (Figure 1B).

Of note, T3 is also a potent mitogen that, in the liver, induces Cyclin-D1 expression<sup>[51]</sup>. Very recently, it has been shown that it exerts hepatocyte mitogenic response by PKA-dependent  $\beta$ -catenin activation, thus eliciting a potent liver regeneration action<sup>[52]</sup>. This has suggested that T3 can have therapeutic relevance in the treatment of selected cases of hepatic insufficiency.

However, long term treatment with T3, both in animals and humans, can produce several adverse effects including systemic thyrotoxicosis. Thus, extensive research is dedicated to the identification of new effective and safe active molecules (T3-derivatives and analogues) for the treatment of dyslipidemias, NAFLD, obesity and related disorders.

In particular, the development of synthetic thyroid hormone analogues which have tissue-selective hormone actions (*i.e.*, selective thyromimetics) has been pursued.

## THYROMIMETICS AND LIVER STEATOSIS

As mentioned previously, many of the T3 actions are tissue-specific and are primarily mediated by a panel of TR isoforms that are expressed in different ratios in various tissues. Thus, there is a rationale to pursue approaches that selectively modulate TRs function, and several agents have been shown to have some  $\beta$ -selective, hepatic selective and/or cardiac sparing activities. The possibility of selectively targeting the TR $\beta$  was suggested by the findings that the TR $\alpha$ -forms may preferentially regulate the heart rate, whereas many other actions of T3 are mediated by the TR $\beta$ . X-ray crystal structures of the TR $\alpha$  and TR $\beta$  ligand-binding domains (LBDs) suggested that a

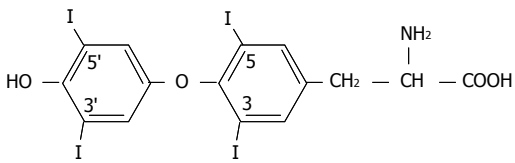
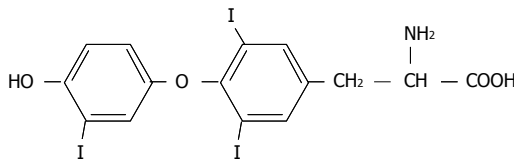
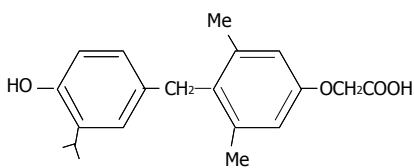
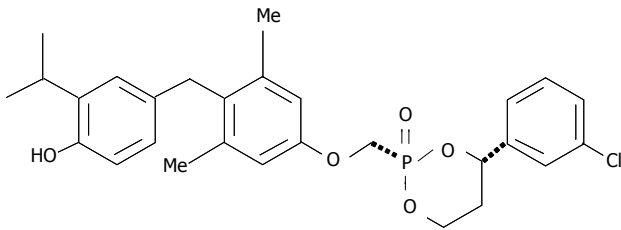
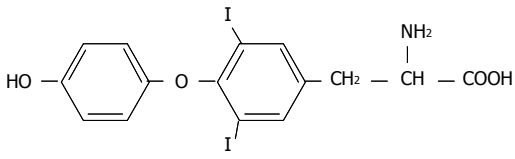
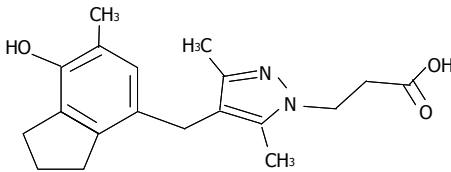
Thyroid hormones	
 <p>Thyroxine (T4)</p>	 <p>3,3',5-triiodo-L-thyronine (T3)</p>
Thyromimetics/analogues	
 <p>Sobetrome (GC-1)</p>	 <p>MB07811</p>
 <p>3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine (T2)</p>	 <p>TRC150094 (TRC)</p>

Figure 2 Chemical structure of thyroid hormones and thyromimetics/analogues with reported anti-steatotic effects.

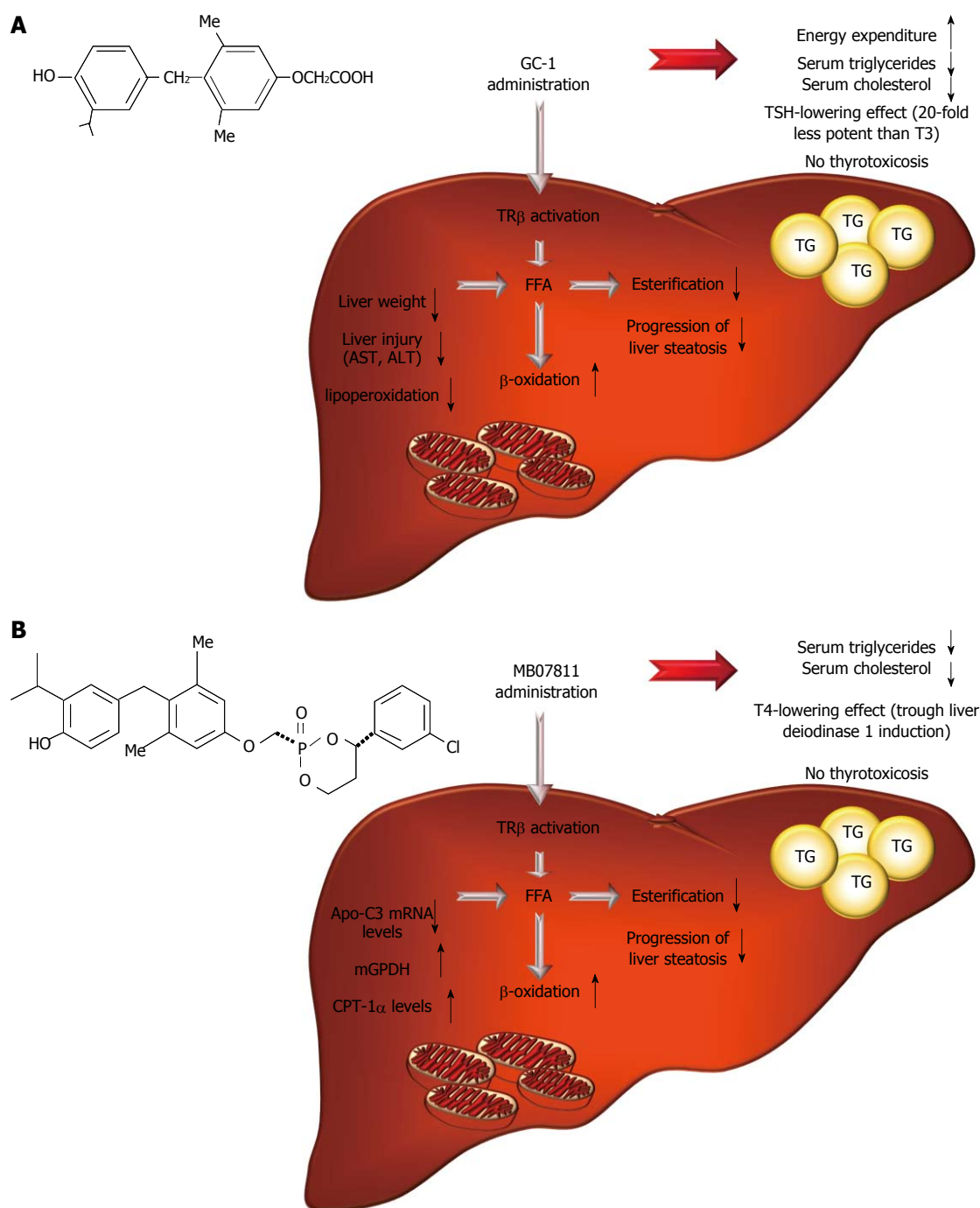
single amino acid difference in the ligand-binding cavities of the two receptors could affect hydrogen bonding in the receptor region where the ligand's 1-position substituent fits and might be exploited to generate  $\beta$ -selective ligands<sup>[53]</sup>.

The development of a  $\text{TR}\beta$ -selective agonist has prompted a number of studies addressing whether such molecules could be used to trigger the metabolic effects of T3 while preserving the  $\text{TR}\alpha$ -expressing tissues<sup>[54-58]</sup>. Essentially, these studies have been encouraging as it has been shown that the use of  $\text{TR}\beta$ -selective agonists can prevent or improve metabolic parameters and/or complications resulting from high-fat feeding, NAFLD<sup>[20]</sup>, or genetic hypercholesterolemia<sup>[59,60]</sup> with the liver being their major target. Indeed, tissue distribution analyses suggest that these molecules achieve  $\text{TR}\beta$  selectivity by virtue of being concentrated predominantly in liver<sup>[55,61]</sup>.  $\text{TR}\beta$  activation in the liver also favorably affects plasma cholesterol and lipoprotein levels by multiple mechanisms, which include increasing: (1) LDL clearance through increased expression of LDLR, (2) high-density lipoprotein (HDL) uptake through SR-B1 (scavenger receptor class B type 1); and (3) bile acid synthesis *via* CYP7A1<sup>[62]</sup>.

To exploit the favorable consequences of hepatic  $\text{TR}\beta$  activation, a variety of synthetic  $\text{TR}\beta$  agonists have been prepared and tested on a variety of experimental models<sup>[63-73]</sup>. Ideally, these selective  $\text{TR}\beta$  agonists, would cause modest increases in the metabolic rate without tachycardia<sup>[22]</sup>. However, it has been reported that most of thyromimetics could suppress thyroid axis and lower serum T4/T3 levels, especially at high doses.

Here, we will discuss two thyromimetics, namely GC-1<sup>[74]</sup> and MB07811<sup>[57,75,76]</sup> (Figure 2), for which these effects are less marked and which, at the same time, elicit anti-steatotic effects. In particular, MB07811, being specifically targeted to the liver, reduces serum T4 levels (-50% in Sprague-Dawley rats) probably by enhancing T4 to T3 conversion through deiodinase 1<sup>[53,57]</sup>. As far as it concerns GC-1, it has been shown a dose-dependent ability to reduce thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) levels, being this action 20-fold less potent than that of T3<sup>[55]</sup>.

GC-1 (or sobetirome) is a halogen-free thyroid hormone agonist<sup>[74]</sup>. Although the structural changes it contains with respect to the natural hormone T3 (*i.e.*, replacement of the three iodines with methyl and isopro-



**Figure 3** A summary of key events and molecular pathways underlying GC-1 (A) and MB07811 (B) anti-steatotic and hypolipidemic effects (for details see the text). TSH: Thyroid-stimulating hormone; T3: 3,3',5-triiodo-L-thyronine; TR $\beta$ : Thyroid hormone receptor  $\beta$  isoform; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; FFA: Free fatty acid; TG: Triglyceride; T4: Thyroxine; Apo-C3: Apolipoprotein C3; mGPDH: Mitochondrial glycerol-3-phosphate dehydrogenase; CPT-1 $\alpha$ : Carnitine palmitoyltransferase-1 $\alpha$ .

pyl groups, replacement of the biaryl-ether linkage with methylene linkage, and replacement of the amino acid side chain with an oxyacetic acid side chain<sup>[77]</sup>, it binds the TR $\beta$  with an affinity that is comparable to that of T3<sup>[22]</sup>. Functionally, when GC1 is administered to rats undergoing a CMD diet prevents and reverses the hepatic steatosis much like T3<sup>[20]</sup>. Moreover, similar to T3, GC-1 can reduce liver weight, liver weight/body weight ratio, and serum TGs levels. GC-1 also causes a reduction of CMD-induced TGs accumulation in the liver, with the

disappearance of hepatic TGs being accompanied by a concomitant decrease of lipoperoxidation, and of liver injury as indicated by the significant reduction in AST and ALT levels<sup>[20]</sup>. These findings made GC-1 an ideal molecule for therapies against fatty liver disease. Interestingly, GC-1 also stimulates energy expenditure<sup>[78]</sup> and mitochondrial oxidative processes but to a lesser extent compared to T3<sup>[79,80]</sup> (Figure 3A). Notably, animal studies<sup>[55]</sup> revealed that treatment with GC-1 also induces a reduction of cholesterol levels similar to that obtained

with equimolar doses of T3 and even higher than that achieved with the most common drugs currently available on the market for the treatment of hypercholesterolemia, such as the inhibitors of HMG CoA reductase (statins)<sup>[77]</sup>. In doing so, GC-1 regulates key steps in the reverse cholesterol transport pathway<sup>[62]</sup>, increasing the expression of HDL receptor SR-B1 in the liver, stimulating the activity of CYP7A1 and inducing the expression of hepatic ATP-binding cassette proteins G5/G8 (ABCG5/G8), which promote biliary cholesterol secretion. Consequently, treated animals displayed an increased turnover of plasma HDL cholesterol, and an increased amount of fecal excretion of bile acids and cholesterol<sup>[70]</sup>. Phase 1 clinical studies tested the therapeutic concept of lowering cholesterol and found GC-1 to be generally well tolerated at all doses studied<sup>[81,82]</sup>.

In a recent study, GC-1 has also been shown to be capable of markedly reducing serum cholesterol in mice devoid of functional LDLRs by inducing CYP7A1 expression<sup>[60]</sup>. These results, having elucidated the possibility that a LDLR-independent mechanism could underlie GC-1 action, potentiated the idea that GC-1 may represent a promising cholesterol-lowering therapeutic with a specific application for the treatment of diseases such as homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia. Currently, there are only limited treatment options for this disorder because most therapeutics are only minimally effective.

Another agent being studied is MB07811 which exhibits increased TR activation in liver relative to other tissues<sup>[57]</sup>. By using several experimental approaches, MB07811 was shown to have anti-steatotic activity and was able to reduce hepatic triglyceride levels in both normal and metabolically-challenged animal models, including ob/ob mice, Zucker rats, and mice with diet-induced obesity (rodent models of NAFLD)<sup>[83]</sup>. The main mechanism underlying MB07811 effects appears to be an augmented metabolic rate in the liver and, specifically, an increased rate of mitochondrial  $\beta$ -oxidation. MB07811 increases: (1) the levels of CPT-1 $\alpha$ <sup>[35]</sup> and short and intermediate length acyl-carnitine species in plasma and (2) the liver mitochondrial respiration rates as well as the activity of hepatic mitochondrial glycerol-3-phosphate dehydrogenase (mGPDH), an enzyme which is important for energy production and dissipation. Decreased mRNA levels of apolipoprotein C3 (Apo-C3), an inhibitor of hepatic lipase activity, might also contribute to the activation of fatty acid oxidation pathways. Additionally, MB07811 can also lower both serum cholesterol and triglyceride levels<sup>[83,84]</sup> (Figure 3B). These data in rodents confirm that MB07811 represents a novel class of liver-targeted TR agonists with beneficial LDL-lowering properties, and suggest that these compounds may provide additional therapeutic benefit to hyperlipidemic patients with concomitant NAFLD<sup>[83]</sup>. The human Phase 1b clinical trial showed reduced LDL cholesterol and TGs levels in both normolipidemic and hyperlipidemic subjects without severe adverse events<sup>[23]</sup>.

Together, these data demonstrate that selective activa-

tion of hepatic TR prevents or reverses fatty liver and reveals a new approach to treat NAFLD based on selectively burning hepatic fat.

Now, the question is whether other molecules such as naturally occurring TH metabolites, even deprived of TR selectivity or characterized by low binding affinity for TRs, can have uses as therapeutic applications.

## NATURALLY OCCURRING IODOTHYRONINES AND LIVER STEATOSIS: 3,5-T2

An increasing amount of data indicates that there are at least four natural iodothyronines with significant, but not identical, biological activities, namely T4, T3, rT3 (reverse T3), and 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine (T2). T2 is particularly intriguing because of its effects on metabolism<sup>[22,25,26]</sup>. T2 has been estimated, in euthyroid rats, to reach serum concentrations of approximately 5 pM and is present in liver at concentrations of approximately 1.0 fmol/100 mg<sup>[85]</sup>. In humans, serum T2 levels consistently elevated in disease states, with the mean T2 serum level being  $16.2 \pm 6.4$  pM in healthy subjects,  $21.6 \pm 4.8$  pM in patients with brain tumors and  $46.7 \pm 48.8$  pM in patients with sepsis<sup>[86]</sup>.

T2 measurements are routinely taken using methods based on immunoassays, an approach with high sensitivity but which lacks specificity for many analytes<sup>[87,88]</sup>. In recent years, mass spectrometry (MS) techniques have drawn attention to the analyses of T4 and T3 because they provide high mass accuracy, structural information, and have the ability to quantify the hormones<sup>[89-93]</sup>. A recently developed methodology revealed that electrospray ionization tandem mass spectrometry (ESI-MS/MS) can be used for identification and quantification of mixtures of isomers and has been applied to identify and quantify T3 and rT3 isomers as well as T2 isomers<sup>[94,95]</sup>. Currently, however, intrinsic instrumental limits restrain the application of such approaches as routine tools for biological samples analysis and slow the advancements in understanding T2 metabolism<sup>[96,97]</sup>.

T2 is a product of a currently unknown peripheral enzymatic process most probably utilizing T3 as its precursor<sup>[85]</sup> and has 50-1000 times lower affinity for TR than T3<sup>[98]</sup>. Thus, it is unlikely that TR activation represents a central mechanism in its effects on metabolism, at least in physiological conditions. However, more recent studies have reported new data concerning T2 binding to TR $\beta$  isoforms in teleosts<sup>[99,100]</sup>. Specifically, T2 has been shown to bind and transactivate both the human and the long tilapia TR $\beta$ 1 isoform whereas T3 preferentially binds the short isoform. These results prompted a reevaluation of the mechanisms of action of thyroid hormone metabolites.

Several studies on T2 effects in mammals revealed its ability to stimulate cellular/mitochondrial respiration by pathways with mitochondria and bioenergetic mecha-

nisms being the major targets<sup>[26,80,101-103]</sup>. Outside the mitochondria, T2 also has effects on carriers, ion-exchangers, and enzymes, and may affect the transcription of some genes, but again the underlying mechanisms appear to be different from those elicited by T3<sup>[26]</sup>.

In 1998, Arnold *et al.*<sup>[104]</sup> identified the Va subunit of the mitochondrial respiratory chain complex cytochrome-*c* oxidase (COX) as a specific binding site for T2 using photoaffinity labeling procedures. T2 binding to the COX complex abolishes the allosteric ATP inhibition of COX which leads to a decrease in the respiratory control ratio of the complex<sup>[105]</sup> thus rendering the oxidative phosphorylation more inefficient.

The biological and pharmacological importance of T2 has become a topic of considerable interest to researchers during the past few years, and now represents a significant and promising issue in the field of metabolism and THs.

The effects and mechanisms underlining the beneficial actions of T2 have so far been studied with both *in vivo* and *in vitro*<sup>[106-108]</sup> models. *In vivo* studies from different laboratories have shown that acute or chronic administration of T2 to rats results in significant changes in mitochondrial activities and resting metabolic rate<sup>[22,26,109]</sup>.

A recent study reported an increased basal metabolic rate and decreased body weight also in humans chronically administrated with T2 with no deleterious side effects on the thyroid axis or at the cardiac level<sup>[110]</sup>.

Of the currently described *in vivo* stimulatory and beneficial effects of T2, a particular physiological and pharmacological relevance appears to be associated with those effects that we can define as hypolipidemic and anti-steatotic effects which have been described in several animal models<sup>[111-114]</sup>. Among the methods to study liver metabolism and physiology, the variation in the nutritional status is a widely used approach because of its ability to affect several signaling pathways and regulatory mechanisms<sup>[115-118]</sup>. High fat feeding (HFD) in animals, in particular, has the advantage to mimic most features of human fat overload and overnutrition and allows the study of obesity and related disorders such as ectopic fat accumulation.

Specifically, the administration of T2 to rats subjected to HFD is able to prevent and reduce the visceral fat accumulation as well as hepatosteatosis, serum levels of triglycerides and cholesterol, and the onset of IR without inducing thyrotoxicosis<sup>[111,112,114,119]</sup>. Moreover, T2 has been reported to elicit additional beneficial effects on lipid metabolism by reducing LDL-cholesterol in a LDLR independent way in a mouse model of familial hypercholesterolemia<sup>[120]</sup>.

The simultaneous administration of T2 (25 µg/100 g body weight) to rats receiving a HFD for 4 wk can prevent liver steatosis by stimulating hepatic fatty acid oxidation and increasing mitochondrial uncoupling<sup>[111]</sup>. This leads to a less efficient utilization of lipid substrates, and helps to prevent body-weight gain, hepatic fat accumulation, hypertriglyceridemia and hypercholesterolemia lev-

els without inducing changes in T3 and T4 serum levels or affecting the hypothalamus-pituitary-thyroid (HPT) axis<sup>[111,119]</sup>.

The T2 effects on liver fatty acid oxidation are paralleled by an increased entry of activated fatty acids into the mitochondria *via* activation of the CPT system. This leads to a strong reduction in the fatty acids inside the cell and a strong activation of AMP-activated protein kinase (AMPK), enhancing the cycle of fat uptake and fat burning and the disappearance of lipid droplets (LDs)<sup>[111]</sup>.

Importantly, T2 administration prevents the HDF-induced lipid peroxidation, as well as the increase in H<sub>2</sub>O<sub>2</sub> metabolism counteracting both lipid accumulation and oxidative stress associated with increased fat metabolism<sup>[121]</sup>.

In a more recent study, to further investigate how T2 affects lipid and glucose metabolism in HFD rats eliciting beneficial effects on liver, independently of AMPK, the involvement of another important regulator of metabolic balance<sup>[122-127]</sup>, SIRT1, was studied<sup>[114]</sup>. In HFD rats, T2 was demonstrated to (1) rapidly increase hepatic nuclear SIRT1 activity and (2) through SIRT1-activation, deacetylate PGC-1α and SREBP-1c with a concomitant upregulation of genes involved in mitochondrial biogenesis and downregulation of lipogenic genes<sup>[114]</sup>. Moreover, the obtained data added new information on the time-latency of the anti-steatotic effect of T2 which within 6 h after administration, rapidly and directly activates hepatic SIRT1 (affecting β-oxidation and mitochondrial biogenesis) and later (4 wk) promotes AMPK phosphorylation/activation thus profoundly modulating liver expression pattern of genes and proteins.

A proteomic study<sup>[113]</sup> showed that the steatotic effect of HFD, and the anti-steatotic effect of T2-treatment are strictly associated with altered expression levels of several proteins and enzymes involved in key liver metabolic (canonical and non-canonical) pathways across different subcellular compartments (*i.e.*, cytoplasm, mitochondria and nuclei). These pathways included: fatty acid metabolism, ketone-bodies and energy metabolism, amino acid and nitrogen metabolism, the urea cycle and the stress response and protein turnover.

All the analyzed liver subcellular compartments were significantly affected, in terms of protein expression, by both HFD and long-term T2-treatment. However, mitochondria appeared to be a major target for the metabolic and energy adaptations induced by fat-overload, and displayed a significant response, in terms of their proteome, to T2-treatment. These data supported the concept that T2-supplementation while having hypolipidemic and anti-steatosis effects, may provide protection against diet-induced liver damage, possibly by counteracting the alterations in the expression of several cellular proteins, reducing oxidative stress and impairing the mitochondrial respiratory chain<sup>[113]</sup>.

T2 administration to rats is also able to reduce pre-existing hepatic fat accumulation (that had already been induced by feeding with a HFD)<sup>[112]</sup> by eliciting systemic

and tissue specific effects. In particular, T2, without suppressing TSH, decreases body weight gain, metabolic efficiency and serum levels of cholesterol, triglycerides and ALT. In the liver, T2 increases hepatic mitochondrial oxygen consumption and fatty acid oxidation and activates mitochondrial proton leak reducing mitochondrial oxidative stress<sup>[112]</sup>.

*In vitro* studies have been performed to address whether the anti-steatotic effect of T2 is due to the direct action of T2 on the liver or if it is a secondary effect due to upstream changes in endocrine or metabolic pathways. Primary cultures of rat hepatocytes overloaded with lipids (“fatty hepatocytes”) and then treated with T2 showed a reduction in: (1) lipid content and LD diameter; (2) PPARs expression; and (3) activities of acyl-CoA oxidase (AOX) and antioxidant enzymes. These data support a direct role of T2 in reducing the excess fat in cultured hepatocytes<sup>[128]</sup>. The putative involvement of TRs in mediating such lipid-lowering effects of T2 has been elucidated using the rat hepatoma FaO cellular model, which is defective for functional TRs<sup>[128]</sup>. The addition of T2 to lipid-overloaded cells resulted in: (1) reduction in lipid content; (2) downregulation of PPAR $\alpha$ , PPAR $\gamma$ , and AOX expression; (3) increase in PPAR $\delta$  expression; and (4) stimulation of mitochondrial uncoupling<sup>[128]</sup>. These data demonstrate, for the first time that the *in vitro* lipid-lowering actions of T2 may be not mediated by TRs.

All the utilized approaches, both in animal models and humans, successfully highlighted metabolic actions and potential pharmacological use of T2. Notably, T2, without thyrotoxic side effects, increasing resting metabolic rate, decreasing adiposity and body weight, could be considered an active agent in preparation for treatment of metabolic disorders, such as T2DM, overweight and NAFLD (Figure 4A).

## THYROID HORMONE FUNCTIONAL ANALOGUES: TRC150094 (TRC)

T2 research has been recently focused on the discovery and development of T2 functional analogues with therapeutic potentials. In particular, a series of novel substituted pyrazoles were designed and synthesized as T2 analogs with lower affinities toward TRs. Among these molecules, TRC150094 (TRC) has attracted particular attention emerging as a novel thyromimetic and functional T2-analogue linking fat consumption with the pathogenesis of hepatic steatosis. The chemical name for TRC is 3-[4-(7-hydroxy-6-methyl-indan-4-ylmethyl)-3,5-dimethyl-pyrazol-1-yl]-propionic acid, and its chemical structure is shown in Figure 2. TRC was synthesized by the Torrent Research Centre, Torrent Pharmaceuticals Ltd., Ahmedabad, Gujarat, India and has a much lower potency toward both TR $\alpha$ 1 and TR $\beta$ 1 isoforms’ activation than T3. Therefore, it is devoid of adverse effects on the heart classically associated with TR hyperactivation [the rank order of potencies for TR ( $\alpha$ 1/ $\beta$ 1) transcriptional activation being T3 > T2 >> TRC<sup>[129]</sup>].

When screened for its *in vivo* metabolic effects, TRC (injected, at a dose of 0.750 mg/100 g body weight, in rats simultaneously undergoing a HFD for 4 wk) counteracts the hepatic pathological condition observed in HFD rats without any thyrotoxic effects<sup>[129]</sup>. The anti-steatotic activity of TRC is due to increased rates of mitochondrial fatty acid uptake and oxidation, respiratory chain activity and resting metabolic rate, and to the activation of the CPT system<sup>[129,130]</sup>. Importantly, TRC significantly increases SIRT1 activity although the SIRT1 protein level remains unaltered. These results strongly suggested that a TRC-induced increase in SIRT1 activity might underlie the increase in fatty acid oxidation and the prevention of liver steatosis observed in the TRC-treated rats<sup>[129]</sup>.

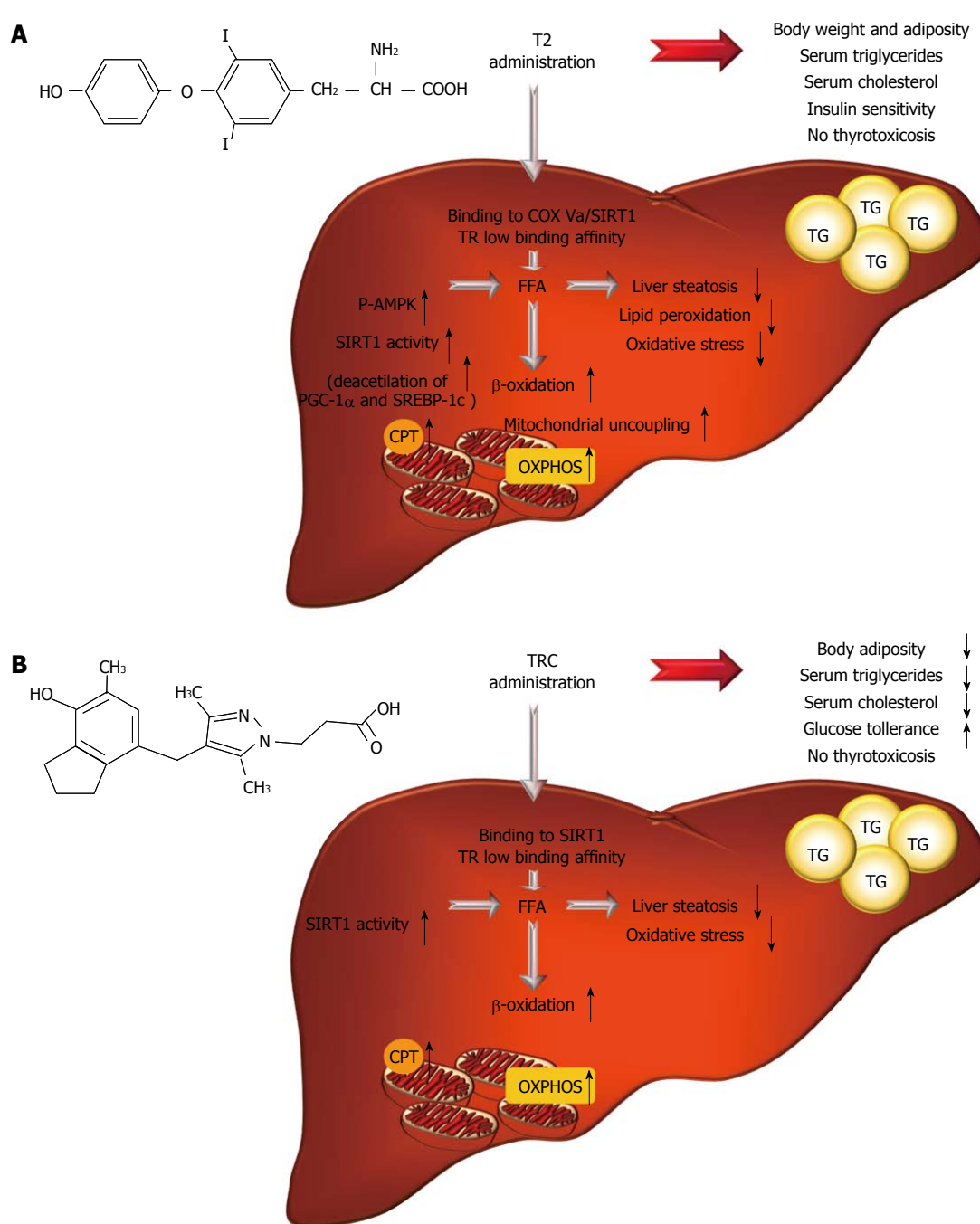
An integrated functional study performed by combining *in vivo* and *ex vivo* metabolic assays with proteomic and bioinformatic analyses showed that TRC administration to rats with pre-existing body fat accumulation significantly altered the expression levels of several proteins and enzymes involved in key liver metabolic pathways, including amino acid, nitrogen, fructose and mannose metabolism, and RXR activation and function<sup>[130]</sup>. Consistent with the increased oxidation of mitochondrial fatty acids and the unaltered mitochondrial efficiency, numerous mitochondrial enzymes associated with fatty acid oxidation and energy metabolism were increased in livers from HFD-TRC<sup>[130]</sup>.

Oral administration of TRC to obese Zucker rats (obese ZSF1, spontaneously hypertensive fatty rats) decreased hepatic steatosis<sup>[131]</sup> by inducing a significant increase in mitochondrial respiration as well as an increased fatty acids oxidation. All the above mentioned studies have so far provided the characterization of the pharmacological/metabolic effects of TRC and highlighted its potential utility as a new compound with effectiveness for prevention/amelioration of certain key biochemical parameters altered during feeding on a HFD-regimen and a cluster of multiple cardiovascular risk factors associated with visceral obesity, steatosis and metabolic derangements (Figure 4B). If reproduced in humans, these results could determine whether TRC150094 represents an attractive therapeutic agent for the treatment of overweight dysglycemic patients.

Indeed, clinical trials are currently in progress to translate these effects into approaches for the treatment of human obesity.

## THYROID HORMONES AND MITOCHONDRIAL FUNCTIONS

As already stated, mitochondria play a fundamental role in the development, perpetuation and worsening of liver steatosis and NAFLD. Indeed, the generation of NAFLD, apart from involving defects or polymorphisms in mitochondrial DNA, can be an important consequence of damages to the respiratory chain complexes impairing mitochondrial oxidative capacity, particularly critical when fatty acid supply to the hepatocytes is increased as



**Figure 4** A summary of key events and molecular pathways underlying T2 (A) and TRC (B) anti-steatotic and hypolipidemic effects (for details see the text). T2: 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine; TR: Thyroid hormone receptor; COX Va: Cytochrome-c oxidase Va subunit; FFA: Free fatty acid; TG: Triglyceride; P-AMPK: Phosphorylated AMP-activated protein kinase; SIRT1: NAD<sup>+</sup>-dependent deacetylase sirtuin 1; PGC-1α: Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor γ coactivator; SREBP-1c: Sterol response element binding protein-1c; CPT: Carnitine palmitoyltransferase system; OXPHOS: Oxidative phosphorylation system.

in calorie-rich diets<sup>[132]</sup>.

Mitochondrial bioenergetics deficits may be the consequence of: (1) a progressive decay of oxidative capacity with impairments of β-oxidation; and (2) major changes in the redox balance with increased reactive oxygen species production.

It is widely recognized that mitochondria are central targets for THs actions. Indeed, mitochondria, providing about the 90% of the cellular energy supply, likely may be a major player of the so called calorogenic effects of

THs<sup>[133]</sup>. In particular, T3 stimulates mitochondriogenesis and thereby augments cellular oxidative capacity and induces, at the same time, substantial modifications in mitochondrial inner membrane protein and lipid compositions, activating uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation<sup>[133]</sup>.

In terms of time latency, two types of effects of T3 on mitochondria have been described: (1) a rapid stimulation of respiration, which is evident within minutes/hours after hormone treatment; (2) a delayed induction

of mitochondrial biogenesis and changes in mitochondrial mass, which occur one to several days after hormone treatment. The first effect is probably due to extranuclear/non-genomic mechanisms; the second one involves both T3-responsive nuclear genes and a direct action of T3 at mitochondrial level<sup>[109,133]</sup>. In other words, this second effect allows T3 to modulate mitochondria activity in two different ways: direct or indirect. The direct action requires the presence inside the organelles of specific binding sites for the hormone<sup>[134-136]</sup> while the indirect one possibly requires T3 binding to extramitochondrial sites and the modulation of the expression of either nuclear-encoded mitochondrial proteins or intermediate factors (e.g., nuclear respiratory factors 1 and 2; mitochondrial transcription factor A)<sup>[137,138]</sup>.

T3, by the regulation of these pathways, allows the coordinated expression of both the nuclear and the mitochondrial genome that in turn modulates mitochondrial biogenesis, turnover and bioenergetics.

Although the network of factors and cellular events involved in T3 signaling remains incompletely understood, the so far described mechanisms can justify, at least in part, the above reported hypolipidemic and anti-steatotic effects elicited by T3 in NAFLD.

## CONCLUSION

Considering the impact of THs on the maintenance of lipid homeostasis but also of their adverse effects in TH excess states, recent efforts to identify effective and safe treatments for the counteraction of metabolic disorders (such as liver steatosis), has led to the development and characterization of thyromimetics. Some of these analogs are undergoing further examinations for possible clinical applications. However, despite their original promise, it is unlikely that any first generation synthetic ligands (i.e., GC-1 and MB07811) which already reached human clinical trials will develop into therapeutics. Thus, attention should be focused on other molecules, such as T2 or TRC which could have therapeutic applications. Indeed, such compounds could serve as powerful new tools to address some of the largest over-nutrition associated medical problems as they are able to reduce, at least in animal models of diet-induced obesity, body adiposity, serum triglycerides and cholesterol. They also preserve glucose homeostasis without thyrotoxic side effects. Notably, the hypolipidemic effect of T2 is associated with a potent ability in both preventing and reducing fatty liver. Increasing evidence supports TH derivatives and analogues as attractive active agents that could be taken into consideration for the establishment of new treatments in the counteraction of metabolic disorders, such as T2DM, obesity and NAFLD, thus clinical trials are desirable.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Ibrahim MA**, Kelleni M, Geddawy A. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: current and potential therapies. *Life Sci* 2013; **92**: 114-118 [PMID: 23159641 DOI: 10.1016/j.lfs.2012.11.004]

- 2 **Browning JD**, Horton JD. Molecular mediators of hepatic steatosis and liver injury. *J Clin Invest* 2004; **114**: 147-152 [PMID: 15254578]
- 3 **Bradbury MW**, Berk PD. Lipid metabolism in hepatic steatosis. *Clin Liver Dis* 2004; **8**: 639-71, xi [PMID: 15331068]
- 4 **Postic C**, Girard J. The role of the lipogenic pathway in the development of hepatic steatosis. *Diabetes Metab* 2008; **34**: 643-648 [PMID: 19195625 DOI: 10.1016/S1262-3636(08)74599-3]
- 5 **Pessayre D**. Role of mitochondria in non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **22** Suppl 1: S20-S27 [PMID: 17567459]
- 6 **Serviddio G**, Sastre J, Bellanti F, Viña J, Vendemiale G, Altomare E. Mitochondrial involvement in non-alcoholic steatohepatitis. *Mol Aspects Med* 2008; **29**: 22-35 [PMID: 18061659]
- 7 **Patti ME**, Butte AJ, Crunkhorn S, Cusi K, Berria R, Kashyap S, Miyazaki Y, Kohane I, Costello M, Saccone R, Landaker EJ, Goldfine AB, Mun E, DeFronzo R, Finlayson J, Kahn CR, Mandarino LJ. Coordinated reduction of genes of oxidative metabolism in humans with insulin resistance and diabetes: Potential role of PGC1 and NRF1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 8466-8471 [PMID: 12832613]
- 8 **Sparks LM**, Xie H, Koza RA, Mynatt R, Hulver MW, Bray GA, Smith SR. A high-fat diet coordinately downregulates genes required for mitochondrial oxidative phosphorylation in skeletal muscle. *Diabetes* 2005; **54**: 1926-1933 [PMID: 15983191]
- 9 **Lomonaco R**, Sunny NE, Bril F, Cusi K. Nonalcoholic fatty liver disease: current issues and novel treatment approaches. *Drugs* 2013; **73**: 1-14 [PMID: 23329465 DOI: 10.1007/s40265-012-0004-0]
- 10 **Tessari P**, Coracina A, Cosma A, Tiengo A. Hepatic lipid metabolism and non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis* 2009; **19**: 291-302 [PMID: 19359149 DOI: 10.1016/j.numecd.2008.12.015]
- 11 **McCullough AJ**. Pathophysiology of nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2006; **40** Suppl 1: S17-S29 [PMID: 16540762]
- 12 **Videla LA**, Rodrigo R, Araya J, Poniachik J. Oxidative stress and depletion of hepatic long-chain polyunsaturated fatty acids may contribute to nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2004; **37**: 1499-1507 [PMID: 15454290]
- 13 **Sies H**, Stahl W, Sevanian A. Nutritional, dietary and postprandial oxidative stress. *J Nutr* 2005; **135**: 969-972 [PMID: 15867266]
- 14 **Aronis A**, Madar Z, Tirosh O. Mechanism underlying oxidative stress-mediated lipotoxicity: exposure of J774.2 macrophages to triacylglycerols facilitates mitochondrial reactive oxygen species production and cellular necrosis. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2005; **38**: 1221-1230 [PMID: 15808420]
- 15 **Méndez-Sánchez N**, Arrese M, Zamora-Valdés D, Uribe M. Treating nonalcoholic fatty liver disease. *Liver Int* 2007; **27**: 1157-1165 [PMID: 17919226]
- 16 **Oh MK**, Winn J, Poordad F. Review article: diagnosis and treatment of non-alcoholic fatty liver disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **28**: 503-522 [PMID: 18532991 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2008.03752.x]
- 17 **Belfort R**, Harrison SA, Brown K, Darland C, Finch J, Hardies J, Balas B, Gastaldelli A, Tio F, Pulcini J, Berria R, Ma JZ, Dwivedi S, Havranek R, Fincke C, DeFronzo R, Bannayan GA, Schenker S, Cusi K. A placebo-controlled trial of pioglitazone in subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 2297-2307 [PMID: 17135584]
- 18 **Aithal GP**, Thomas JA, Kaye PV, Lawson A, Ryder SD, Spendlove I, Austin AS, Freeman JG, Morgan L, Webber J. Randomized, placebo-controlled trial of pioglitazone in nondiabetic subjects with nonalcoholic steatohepatitis. *Gastroenterology* 2008; **135**: 1176-1184 [PMID: 18718471 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.07.041]

- 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.06.047]
- 19 **Pramfalk C**, Pedrelli M, Parini P. Role of thyroid receptor  $\beta$  in lipid metabolism. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2011; **1812**: 929-937 [PMID: 21194564 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbadis.2010.12.019]
  - 20 **Perra A**, Simbula G, Simbula M, Pibiri M, Kowalik MA, Sulas P, Cocco MT, Ledda-Columbano GM, Columbano A. Thyroid hormone (T3) and TRbeta agonist GC-1 inhibit/reverse nonalcoholic fatty liver in rats. *FASEB J* 2008; **22**: 2981-2989 [PMID: 18434432 DOI: 10.1096/fj.08-108464]
  - 21 **Braverman LE**, Utiger RD. Introduction to thyrotoxicosis. Werner and Ingbar, editors. Lippincott: The Thyroid, 2000: 515-517
  - 22 **Moreno M**, de Lange P, Lombardi A, Silvestri E, Lanni A, Goglia F. Metabolic effects of thyroid hormone derivatives. *Thyroid* 2008; **18**: 239-253 [PMID: 18279024 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2007.0248]
  - 23 **Baxter JD**, Webb P. Thyroid hormone mimetics: potential applications in atherosclerosis, obesity and type 2 diabetes. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2009; **8**: 308-320 [PMID: 19337272 DOI: 10.1038/nrd2830]
  - 24 **Davis PJ**, Lin HY, Mousa SA, Luidens MK, Hercbergs AA, Wehling M, Davis FB. Overlapping nongenomic and genomic actions of thyroid hormone and steroids. *Steroids* 2011; **76**: 829-833 [PMID: 21354437 DOI: 10.1016/j.steroids.2011.02.012]
  - 25 **Lanni A**, Moreno M, Lombardi A, de Lange P, Goglia F. Control of energy metabolism by iodothyronines. *J Endocrinol Invest* 2001; **24**: 897-913 [PMID: 11817716]
  - 26 **Goglia F**. Biological effects of 3,5-diiodothyronine (T(2)). *Biochemistry (Mosc)* 2005; **70**: 164-172 [PMID: 15807655]
  - 27 **Bassett JH**, Harvey CB, Williams GR. Mechanisms of thyroid hormone receptor-specific nuclear and extra nuclear actions. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2003; **213**: 1-11 [PMID: 15062569]
  - 28 **Lazar MA**. Thyroid hormone action: a binding contract. *J Clin Invest* 2003; **112**: 497-499 [PMID: 12925689]
  - 29 **Moeller LC**, Broecker-Preuss M. Transcriptional regulation by nonclassical action of thyroid hormone. *Thyroid Res* 2011; **4** Suppl 1: S6 [PMID: 21835053 DOI: 10.1186/1756-6614-4-S1-S6]
  - 30 **Cheng SY**, Leonard JL, Davis PJ. Molecular aspects of thyroid hormone actions. *Endocr Rev* 2010; **31**: 139-170 [PMID: 20051527 DOI: 10.1210/er.2009-0007]
  - 31 **Pihlajamäki J**, Boes T, Kim EY, Dearie F, Kim BW, Schroeder J, Mun E, Nasser I, Park PJ, Bianco AC, Goldfine AB, Patti ME. Thyroid hormone-related regulation of gene expression in human fatty liver. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2009; **94**: 3521-3529 [PMID: 19549744 DOI: 10.1210/jc.2009-0212]
  - 32 **Chou WY**, Cheng YS, Ho CL, Liu ST, Liu PY, Kuo CC, Chang HP, Chen YH, Chang GG, Huang SM. Human spot 14 protein interacts physically and functionally with the thyroid receptor. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2007; **357**: 133-138 [PMID: 17418816]
  - 33 **Flores-Morales A**, Gullberg H, Fernandez L, Ståhlberg N, Lee NH, Vennström B, Norstedt G. Patterns of liver gene expression governed by TRbeta. *Mol Endocrinol* 2002; **16**: 1257-1268 [PMID: 12040013]
  - 34 **Hashimoto K**, Yamada M, Matsumoto S, Monden T, Satoh T, Mori M. Mouse sterol response element binding protein-1c gene expression is negatively regulated by thyroid hormone. *Endocrinology* 2006; **147**: 4292-4302 [PMID: 16794015]
  - 35 **Jackson-Hayes L**, Song S, Lavrentyev EN, Jansen MS, Hillgartner FB, Tian L, Wood PA, Cook GA, Park EA. A thyroid hormone response unit formed between the promoter and first intron of the carnitine palmitoyltransferase-1alpha gene mediates the liver-specific induction by thyroid hormone. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 7964-7972 [PMID: 12493735]
  - 36 **Oetting A**, Yen PM. New insights into thyroid hormone action. *Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab* 2007; **21**: 193-208 [PMID: 17574003]
  - 37 **Rodgers JT**, Puigserver P. Fasting-dependent glucose and lipid metabolic response through hepatic sirtuin 1. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 12861-12866 [PMID: 17646659]
  - 38 **Feige JN**, Auwerx J. Transcriptional coregulators in the control of energy homeostasis. *Trends Cell Biol* 2007; **17**: 292-301 [PMID: 17475497]
  - 39 **Thakran S**, Sharma P, Attia RR, Hori RT, Deng X, Elam MB, Park EA. Role of sirtuin 1 in the regulation of hepatic gene expression by thyroid hormone. *J Biol Chem* 2013; **288**: 807-818 [PMID: 23209300 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M112.437970]
  - 40 **Leone TC**, Lehman JJ, Finck BN, Schaeffer PJ, Wende AR, Boudina S, Courtois M, Wozniak DF, Sambandam N, Bernal-Mizrachi C, Chen Z, Holloszy JO, Medeiros DM, Schmidt RE, Saffitz JE, Abel ED, Semenkovich CF, Kelly DP. PGC-1alpha deficiency causes multi-system energy metabolic derangements: muscle dysfunction, abnormal weight control and hepatic steatosis. *PLoS Biol* 2005; **3**: e101 [PMID: 15760270]
  - 41 **Yoon JC**, Puigserver P, Chen G, Donovan J, Wu Z, Rhee J, Adelman G, Stafford J, Kahn CR, Granner DK, Newgard CB, Spiegelman BM. Control of hepatic gluconeogenesis through the transcriptional coactivator PGC-1. *Nature* 2001; **413**: 131-138 [PMID: 11557972]
  - 42 **Puigserver P**, Rhee J, Donovan J, Walkey CJ, Yoon JC, Oriente F, Kitamura Y, Altomonte J, Dong H, Accili D, Spiegelman BM. Insulin-regulated hepatic gluconeogenesis through FOXO1-PGC-1alpha interaction. *Nature* 2003; **423**: 550-555 [PMID: 12754525]
  - 43 **Wu Y**, Delerive P, Chin WW, Burris TP. Requirement of helix 1 and the AF-2 domain of the thyroid hormone receptor for coactivation by PGC-1. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 8898-8905 [PMID: 11751919]
  - 44 **Zhang Y**, Ma K, Song S, Elam MB, Cook GA, Park EA. Peroxisomal proliferator-activated receptor-gamma coactivator-1 alpha (PGC-1 alpha) enhances the thyroid hormone induction of carnitine palmitoyltransferase I (CPT-I alpha). *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 53963-53971 [PMID: 15469941]
  - 45 **Sadana P**, Zhang Y, Song S, Cook GA, Elam MB, Park EA. Regulation of carnitine palmitoyltransferase I (CPT-1alpha) gene expression by the peroxisome proliferator activated receptor gamma coactivator (PGC-1) isoforms. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2007; **267**: 6-16 [PMID: 17239528]
  - 46 **Attia RR**, Connaughton S, Boone LR, Wang F, Elam MB, Ness GC, Cook GA, Park EA. Regulation of pyruvate dehydrogenase kinase 4 (PDK4) by thyroid hormone: role of the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor gamma coactivator (PGC-1 alpha). *J Biol Chem* 2010; **285**: 2375-2385 [PMID: 19948729 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M109.039081]
  - 47 **Gnoni GV**, Rochira A, Leone A, Damiano F, Marsigliante S, Siculella L. 3,5,3'-triiodo-L-thyronine induces SREBP-1 expression by non-genomic actions in human HEP G2 cells. *J Cell Physiol* 2012; **227**: 2388-2397 [PMID: 21826653 DOI: 10.1002/jcp.22974]
  - 48 **Ness GC**, Pendleton LC, Li YC, Chiang JY. Effect of thyroid hormone on hepatic cholesterol 7 alpha hydroxylase, LDL receptor, HMG-CoA reductase, farnesyl pyrophosphate synthetase and apolipoprotein A-I mRNA levels in hypophysectomized rats. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1990; **172**: 1150-1156 [PMID: 2123100]
  - 49 **Shin DJ**, Osborne TF. Thyroid hormone regulation and cholesterol metabolism are connected through Sterol Regulatory Element-Binding Protein-2 (SREBP-2). *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 34114-34118 [PMID: 12829694]
  - 50 **Lopez D**, Abisambra Socarrás JF, Bedi M, Ness GC. Activation of the hepatic LDL receptor promoter by thyroid hormone. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2007; **1771**: 1216-1225 [PMID: 17572141]
  - 51 **Pibiri M**, Ledda-Columbano GM, Cossu C, Simbula G, Menegazzi M, Shinozuka H, Columbano A. Cyclin D1

- is an early target in hepatocyte proliferation induced by thyroid hormone (T<sub>3</sub>). *FASEB J* 2001; **15**: 1006-1013 [PMID: 11292661]
- 52 **Fanti M**, Singh S, Ledda-Columbano GM, Columbano A, Monga SP. Triiodothyronine induces hepatocyte proliferation by protein kinase A-dependent -catenin activation in rodents. *Hepatology* 2013; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24122933 DOI: 10.1002/hep.26775]
  - 53 **Meruvu S**, Ayers SD, Winnier G, Webb P. Thyroid hormone analogues: where do we stand in 2013? *Thyroid* 2013; **23**: 1333-1344 [PMID: 23915136]
  - 54 **Chiellini G**, Apriletti JW, Yoshihara HA, Baxter JD, Ribeiro RC, Scanlan TS. A high-affinity subtype-selective agonist ligand for the thyroid hormone receptor. *Chem Biol* 1998; **5**: 299-306 [PMID: 9653548]
  - 55 **Trost SU**, Swanson E, Gloss B, Wang-Iverson DB, Zhang H, Volodarsky T, Grover GJ, Baxter JD, Chiellini G, Scanlan TS, Dillmann WH. The thyroid hormone receptor-beta-selective agonist GC-1 differentially affects plasma lipids and cardiac activity. *Endocrinology* 2000; **141**: 3057-3064 [PMID: 10965874]
  - 56 **Miyabara EH**, Aoki MS, Soares AG, Saltao RM, Vilicev CM, Passarelli M, Scanlan TS, Gouveia CH, Moriscot AS. Thyroid hormone receptor-beta-selective agonist GC-24 spares skeletal muscle type I to II fiber shift. *Cell Tissue Res* 2005; **321**: 233-241 [PMID: 15947969]
  - 57 **Erion MD**, Cable EE, Ito BR, Jiang H, Fujitaki JM, Finn PD, Zhang BH, Hou J, Boyer SH, van Poelje PD, Linemeyer DL. Targeting thyroid hormone receptor-beta agonists to the liver reduces cholesterol and triglycerides and improves the therapeutic index. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 15490-15495 [PMID: 17878314]
  - 58 **Bryzgalova G**, Effendic S, Khan A, Rehnmark S, Barbounis P, Boulet J, Dong G, Singh R, Shapses S, Malm J, Webb P, Baxter JD, Grover GJ. Anti-obesity, anti-diabetic, and lipid lowering effects of the thyroid receptor beta subtype selective agonist KB-141. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 2008; **111**: 262-267 [PMID: 18621127 DOI: 10.1016/j.jsbmb.2008.06.010]
  - 59 **Grover GJ**, Mellström K, Malm J. Therapeutic potential for thyroid hormone receptor-beta selective agonists for treating obesity, hyperlipidemia and diabetes. *Curr Vasc Pharmacol* 2007; **5**: 141-154 [PMID: 17430219]
  - 60 **Lin JZ**, Martagón AJ, Hsueh WA, Baxter JD, Gustafsson JÅ, Webb P, Phillips KJ. Thyroid hormone receptor agonists reduce serum cholesterol independent of the LDL receptor. *Endocrinology* 2012; **153**: 6136-6144 [PMID: 23087171 DOI: 10.1210/en.2011.2081]
  - 61 **Castillo M**, Freitas BC, Rosene ML, Drigo RA, Grozovsky R, Maciel RM, Patti ME, Ribeiro MO, Bianco AC. Impaired metabolic effects of a thyroid hormone receptor beta-selective agonist in a mouse model of diet-induced obesity. *Thyroid* 2010; **20**: 545-553 [PMID: 20406106 DOI: 10.1089/thy.2009.0318]
  - 62 **Johansson L**, Rudling M, Scanlan TS, Lundåsen T, Webb P, Baxter J, Angelin B, Parini P. Selective thyroid receptor modulation by GC-1 reduces serum lipids and stimulates steps of reverse cholesterol transport in euthyroid mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 10297-10302 [PMID: 16006512]
  - 63 **Ye L**, Li YL, Mellström K, Mellin C, Bladh LG, Koehler K, Garg N, Garcia Collazo AM, Litten C, Husman B, Persson K, Ljunggren J, Grover G, Sleph PG, George R, Malm J. Thyroid receptor ligands. 1. Agonist ligands selective for the thyroid receptor beta1. *J Med Chem* 2003; **46**: 1580-1588 [PMID: 12699376]
  - 64 **Grover GJ**, Mellström K, Ye L, Malm J, Li YL, Bladh LG, Sleph PG, Smith MA, George R, Vennström B, Mookhtiar K, Horvath R, Speelman J, Egan D, Baxter JD. Selective thyroid hormone receptor-beta activation: a strategy for reduction of weight, cholesterol, and lipoprotein (a) with reduced cardiovascular liability. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 10067-10072 [PMID: 12888625]
  - 65 **Baxter JD**, Webb P, Grover G, Scanlan TS. Selective activation of thyroid hormone signaling pathways by GC-1: a new approach to controlling cholesterol and body weight. *Trends Endocrinol Metab* 2004; **15**: 154-157 [PMID: 15109613]
  - 66 **Grover GJ**, Mellstrom K, Malm J. Development of the thyroid hormone receptor beta-subtype agonist KB-141: a strategy for body weight reduction and lipid lowering with minimal cardiac side effects. *Cardiovasc Drug Rev* 2005; **23**: 133-148 [PMID: 16007230]
  - 67 **Brenta G**, Danzi S, Klein I. Potential therapeutic applications of thyroid hormone analogs. *Nat Clin Pract Endocrinol Metab* 2007; **3**: 632-640 [PMID: 17710084]
  - 68 **Berkenstam A**, Kristensen J, Mellström K, Carlsson B, Malm J, Rehnmark S, Garg N, Andersson CM, Rudling M, Sjöberg F, Angelin B, Baxter JD. The thyroid hormone mimetic compound KB2115 lowers plasma LDL cholesterol and stimulates bile acid synthesis without cardiac effects in humans. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 663-667 [PMID: 18160532]
  - 69 **Suckling K**. Selective thyromimetics for atherosclerosis and dyslipidaemia: another old target making progress. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs* 2008; **17**: 615-618 [PMID: 18447589 DOI: 10.1517/13543784.17.5.615]
  - 70 **Tancevski I**, Eller P, Patsch JR, Ritsch A. The resurgence of thyromimetics as lipid-modifying agents. *Curr Opin Investig Drugs* 2009; **10**: 912-918 [PMID: 19705333]
  - 71 **Ladenson PW**, Kristensen JD, Ridgway EC, Olsson AG, Carlsson B, Klein I, Baxter JD, Angelin B. Use of the thyroid hormone analogue eprotirome in statin-treated dyslipidemia. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 906-916 [PMID: 20220185 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0905633]
  - 72 **Tancevski I**, Demetz E, Eller P, Duwensee K, Hoefer J, Heim C, Stanzl U, Wehinger A, Auer K, Karer R, Huber J, Schgoer W, Van Eck M, Vanhoutte J, Fievet C, Stellaard F, Rudling M, Patsch JR, Ritsch A. The liver-selective thyromimetic T-0681 influences reverse cholesterol transport and atherosclerosis development in mice. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e8722 [PMID: 20090943 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0008722]
  - 73 **Tancevski I**, Demetz E, Eller P. Sabetirome: a selective thyromimetic for the treatment of dyslipidemia. *Recent Pat Cardiovasc Drug Discov* 2011; **6**: 16-19 [PMID: 21208155]
  - 74 **Grover GJ**, Egan DM, Sleph PG, Beehler BC, Chiellini G, Nguyen NH, Baxter JD, Scanlan TS. Effects of the thyroid hormone receptor agonist GC-1 on metabolic rate and cholesterol in rats and primates: selective actions relative to 3,5,3'-triiodo-L-thyronine. *Endocrinology* 2004; **145**: 1656-1661 [PMID: 14701670]
  - 75 **Fujitaki JM**, Cable EE, Ito BR, Zhang BH, Hou J, Yang C, Bullough DA, Ferrero JL, van Poelje PD, Linemeyer DL, Erion MD. Preclinical pharmacokinetics of a HepDirect pro-drug of a novel phosphonate-containing thyroid hormone receptor agonist. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2008; **36**: 2393-2403 [PMID: 18703645 DOI: 10.1124/dmd.108.021642]
  - 76 **Boyer SH**, Jiang H, Jacintho JD, Reddy MV, Li H, Li W, Godwin JL, Schulz WG, Cable EE, Hou J, Wu R, Fujitaki JM, Hecker SJ, Erion MD. Synthesis and biological evaluation of a series of liver-selective phosphonic acid thyroid hormone receptor agonists and their prodrugs. *J Med Chem* 2008; **51**: 7075-7093 [PMID: 18975928 DOI: 10.1021/jm800824d]
  - 77 **Columbano A**, Pibiri M, Deidda M, Cossu C, Scanlan TS, Chiellini G, Muntoni S, Ledda-Columbano GM. The thyroid hormone receptor-beta agonist GC-1 induces cell proliferation in rat liver and pancreas. *Endocrinology* 2006; **147**: 3211-3218 [PMID: 16574785]
  - 78 **Vilicev CM**, Freitas FR, Aoki MS, Taffarel C, Scanlan TS, Moriscot AS, Ribeiro MO, Bianco AC, Gouveia CH. Thyroid hormone receptor beta-specific agonist GC-1 increases energy expenditure and prevents fat-mass accumulation in

- rats. *J Endocrinol* 2007; **193**: 21-29 [PMID: 17400799]
- 79 **Venditti P**, Chiellini G, Di Stefano L, Napolitano G, Zucchi R, Columbano A, Scanlan TS, Di Meo S. The TR $\beta$ -selective agonist, GC-1, stimulates mitochondrial oxidative processes to a lesser extent than triiodothyronine. *J Endocrinol* 2010; **205**: 279-289 [PMID: 20360308 DOI: 10.1677/JOE-10-0036]
  - 80 **Cioffi F**, Lanni A, Goglia F. Thyroid hormones, mitochondrial bioenergetics and lipid handling. *Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes* 2010; **17**: 402-407 [PMID: 20625286 DOI: 10.1097/MED.0b013e32833cf354]
  - 81 **Lin VW**, Klepp HM, Hanley RM. Sobetirome is a TR $\beta$ - and liver-selective thyromimetic that can effect substantial LDL-C lowering without significant changes in heart rate or the thyroid axis in euthyroid men. 90th Annual Meeting of The Endocrine Society; 2008 June 15-18; San Francisco, California, USA. The Endocrine Society, 2008: OR36-33
  - 82 **Tancevski I**, Rudling M, Eller P. Thyromimetics: a journey from bench to bed-side. *Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **131**: 33-39 [PMID: 21504761 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2011.04.003]
  - 83 **Cable EE**, Finn PD, Stebbins JW, Hou J, Ito BR, van Poelje PD, Linemeyer DL, Erion MD. Reduction of hepatic steatosis in rats and mice after treatment with a liver-targeted thyroid hormone receptor agonist. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 407-417 [PMID: 19072834 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22572]
  - 84 **Ito BR**, Zhang BH, Cable EE, Song X, Fujitaki JM, MacKenna DA, Wilker CE, Chi B, van Poelje PD, Linemeyer DL, Erion MD. Thyroid hormone beta receptor activation has additive cholesterol lowering activity in combination with atorvastatin in rabbits, dogs and monkeys. *Br J Pharmacol* 2009; **156**: 454-465 [PMID: 19183199 DOI: 10.1111/j.1750-3639.2009.00038.x]
  - 85 **Moreno M**, Lombardi A, Beneduce L, Silvestri E, Pinna G, Goglia F, Lanni A. Are the effects of T3 on resting metabolic rate in euthyroid rats entirely caused by T3 itself? *Endocrinology* 2002; **143**: 504-510 [PMID: 11796504]
  - 86 **Pinna G**, Hiedra L, Meinhold H, Eravci M, Prengel H, Brödel O, Gräf KJ, Stoltenburg-Didinger G, Bauer M, Baumgartner A. 3,3'-Diiodothyronine concentrations in the sera of patients with nonthyroidal illnesses and brain tumors and of healthy subjects during acute stress. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab* 1998; **83**: 3071-3077 [PMID: 9745405]
  - 87 **Murthy JN**, Yatscoff RW, Soldin SJ. Cyclosporine metabolite cross-reactivity in different cyclosporine assays. *Clin Biochem* 1998; **31**: 159-163 [PMID: 9629489]
  - 88 **Soldin SJ**, Steele BW, Witte DL, Wang E, Elin RJ. Lack of specificity of cyclosporine immunoassays. Results of a College of American Pathologists Study. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 2003; **127**: 19-22 [PMID: 12521361]
  - 89 **Hopley CJ**, Stokes P, Webb KS, Baynham M. The analysis of thyroxine in human serum by an 'exact matching' isotope dilution method with liquid chromatography/tandem mass spectrometry. *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom* 2004; **18**: 1033-1038 [PMID: 15150825]
  - 90 **Van Uytvanghe K**, Stöckl D, Thienpont LM. Development of a simplified sample pretreatment procedure as part of an isotope dilution-liquid chromatography/tandem mass spectrometry candidate reference measurement procedure for serum total thyroxine. *Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom* 2004; **18**: 1539-1540 [PMID: 15216518]
  - 91 **Soukhova N**, Soldin OP, Soldin SJ. Isotope dilution tandem mass spectrometric method for T4/T3. *Clin Chim Acta* 2004; **343**: 185-190 [PMID: 15115693]
  - 92 **Tai SS**, Bunk DM, White E, Welch MJ. Development and evaluation of a reference measurement procedure for the determination of total 3,3',5-triiodothyronine in human serum using isotope-dilution liquid chromatography-tandem mass spectrometry. *Anal Chem* 2004; **76**: 5092-5096 [PMID: 15373447]
  - 93 **Hantson AL**, De Meyer M, Guérit N. Simultaneous determination of endogenous and <sup>13</sup>C-labelled thyroid hormones in plasma by stable isotope dilution mass spectrometry. *J Chromatogr B Analyt Technol Biomed Life Sci* 2004; **807**: 185-192 [PMID: 15203028]
  - 94 **Zhang Y**, Conrad AH, Conrad GW. Detection and quantification of 3,5,3'-triiodothyronine and 3,3',5'-triiodothyronine by electrospray ionization tandem mass spectrometry. *J Am Soc Mass Spectrom* 2005; **16**: 1781-1786 [PMID: 16182556]
  - 95 **Zhang Y**, Conrad AH, Thoma R, Conrad GW. Differentiation of diiodothyronines using electrospray ionization tandem mass spectrometry. *J Mass Spectrom* 2006; **41**: 162-168 [PMID: 16353128]
  - 96 **Köhrle J**, Martin C, Renko K, Hoefig CS. Simultaneous analysis of all nine possible iodothyronines by liquid chromatography-tandem mass spectrometry. In: Smit J, Visser T, editors. 37th Annual Meeting of European Thyroid Association; 2013 Sep 7-11; Leiden, The Netherlands. Basel, Reinhardt Druck: Karger, 2013: P241 p.176
  - 97 **Lehmphul I**, Wu Z, Strasburger CJ, Köhrle J. Establishment of a competitive chemiluminescence immunoassay to detect 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine in human serum. In: Smit J, Visser T, editors. 37th Annual Meeting of European Thyroid Association; 2013 Sep 7-11; Leiden, The Netherlands. Basel, Reinhardt Druck: Karger, 2013: P246 p.178
  - 98 **Ball SG**, Sokolov J, Chin WW. 3,5-Diiodo-L-thyronine (T2) has selective thyromimetic effects in vivo and in vitro. *J Mol Endocrinol* 1997; **19**: 137-147 [PMID: 9343306]
  - 99 **Mendoza A**, Navarrete-Ramírez P, Hernández-Puga G, Villalobos P, Holzer G, Renaud JP, Laudet V, Orozco A. 3,5-T2 is an alternative ligand for the thyroid hormone receptor  $\beta$ 1. *Endocrinology* 2013; **154**: 2948-2958 [PMID: 23736295 DOI: 10.1210/en.2013-1030]
  - 100 **Navarrete-Ramírez P**, Luna M, Valverde-R C, Orozco A. 3,5-di-iodothyronine stimulates tilapia growth through an alternate isoform of thyroid hormone receptor  $\beta$ 1. *J Mol Endocrinol* 2014; **52**: 1-9 [PMID: 24031088]
  - 101 **Lanni A**, Moreno M, Cioffi M, Goglia F. Effect of 3,3'-diiodothyronine and 3,5-diiodothyronine on rat liver oxidative capacity. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 1992; **86**: 143-148 [PMID: 1324858]
  - 102 **Lanni A**, Moreno M, Cioffi M, Goglia F. Effect of 3,3'-diiodothyronine and 3,5-di-iodothyronine on rat liver mitochondria. *J Endocrinol* 1993; **136**: 59-64 [PMID: 8381457]
  - 103 **Lanni A**, Moreno M, Lombardi A, Goglia F. Rapid stimulation in vitro of rat liver cytochrome oxidase activity by 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine and by 3,3'-diiodo-L-thyronine. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 1994; **99**: 89-94 [PMID: 8187965]
  - 104 **Arnold S**, Goglia F, Kadenbach B. 3,5-Diiodothyronine binds to subunit Va of cytochrome-c oxidase and abolishes the allosteric inhibition of respiration by ATP. *Eur J Biochem* 1998; **252**: 325-330 [PMID: 9523704]
  - 105 **Kadenbach B**, Hüttemann M, Arnold S, Lee I, Bender E. Mitochondrial energy metabolism is regulated via nuclear-coded subunits of cytochrome c oxidase. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2000; **29**: 211-221 [PMID: 11035249]
  - 106 **Scapin S**, Leoni S, Spagnuolo S, Gnocchi D, De Vito P, Luly P, Pedersen JZ, Incerpi S. Short-term effects of thyroid hormones during development: Focus on signal transduction. *Steroids* 2010; **75**: 576-584 [PMID: 19900468 DOI: 10.1016/j.steroids.2009.10.013]
  - 107 **Grasselli E**, Voci A, Canesi L, De Matteis R, Goglia F, Cioffi F, Fugassa E, Gallo G, Vergani L. Direct effects of iodothyronines on excess fat storage in rat hepatocytes. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 1230-1236 [PMID: 21145833 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.09.027]
  - 108 **Grasselli E**, Voci A, Demori I, Canesi L, De Matteis R, Goglia F, Lanni A, Gallo G, Vergani L. 3,5-Diiodo-L-thyronine modulates the expression of genes of lipid metabolism

- in a rat model of fatty liver. *J Endocrinol* 2012; **212**: 149-158 [PMID: 22107956 DOI: 10.1530/JOE-11-0288]
- 109 **Goglia F**, Moreno M, Lanni A. Action of thyroid hormones at the cellular level: the mitochondrial target. *FEBS Lett* 1999; **452**: 115-120 [PMID: 10386574]
  - 110 **Antonelli A**, Fallahi P, Ferrari SM, Di Domenicantonio A, Moreno M, Lanni A, Goglia F. 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine increases resting metabolic rate and reduces body weight without undesirable side effects. *J Biol Regul Homeost Agents* 2011; **25**: 655-660 [PMID: 22217997]
  - 111 **Lanni A**, Moreno M, Lombardi A, de Lange P, Silvestri E, Ragni M, Farina P, Baccari GC, Fallahi P, Antonelli A, Goglia F. 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine powerfully reduces adiposity in rats by increasing the burning of fats. *FASEB J* 2005; **19**: 1552-1554 [PMID: 16014396]
  - 112 **Mollica MP**, Lionetti L, Moreno M, Lombardi A, De Lange P, Antonelli A, Lanni A, Cavaliere G, Barletta A, Goglia F. 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine, by modulating mitochondrial functions, reverses hepatic fat accumulation in rats fed a high-fat diet. *J Hepatol* 2009; **51**: 363-370 [PMID: 19464748 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2009.03.023]
  - 113 **Silvestri E**, Cioffi F, Glinni D, Ceccarelli M, Lombardi A, de Lange P, Chambery A, Severino V, Lanni A, Goglia F, Moreno M. Pathways affected by 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine in liver of high fat-fed rats: evidence from two-dimensional electrophoresis, blue-native PAGE, and mass spectrometry. *Mol Biosyst* 2010; **6**: 2256-2271 [PMID: 20844788 DOI: 10.1039/c0mb00040j]
  - 114 **de Lange P**, Cioffi F, Senese R, Moreno M, Lombardi A, Silvestri E, De Matteis R, Lionetti L, Mollica MP, Goglia F, Lanni A. Nonthyrotoxic prevention of diet-induced insulin resistance by 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine in rats. *Diabetes* 2011; **60**: 2730-2739 [PMID: 21926273 DOI: 10.2337/db11-0207]
  - 115 **Moreno M**, Lombardi A, De Lange P, Silvestri E, Ragni M, Lanni A, Goglia F. Fasting, lipid metabolism, and triiodo-L-thyronine in rat gastrocnemius muscle: interrelated roles of uncoupling protein 3, mitochondrial thioesterase, and coenzyme Q. *FASEB J* 2003; **17**: 1112-1114 [PMID: 12692085]
  - 116 **de Lange P**, Ragni M, Silvestri E, Moreno M, Schiavo L, Lombardi A, Farina P, Feola A, Goglia F, Lanni A. Combined cDNA array/RT-PCR analysis of gene expression profile in rat gastrocnemius muscle: relation to its adaptive function in energy metabolism during fasting. *FASEB J* 2004; **18**: 350-352 [PMID: 14656997]
  - 117 **de Lange P**, Farina P, Moreno M, Ragni M, Lombardi A, Silvestri E, Burrone L, Lanni A, Goglia F. Sequential changes in the signal transduction responses of skeletal muscle following food deprivation. *FASEB J* 2006; **20**: 2579-2581 [PMID: 17065218]
  - 118 **de Lange P**, Moreno M, Silvestri E, Lombardi A, Goglia F, Lanni A. Fuel economy in food-deprived skeletal muscle: signaling pathways and regulatory mechanisms. *FASEB J* 2007; **21**: 3431-3441 [PMID: 17595346]
  - 119 **Moreno M**, Silvestri E, De Matteis R, de Lange P, Lombardi A, Glinni D, Senese R, Cioffi F, Salzano AM, Scaloni A, Lanni A, Goglia F. 3,5-Diiodo-L-thyronine prevents high-fat-diet-induced insulin resistance in rat skeletal muscle through metabolic and structural adaptations. *FASEB J* 2011; **25**: 3312-3324 [PMID: 21670063 DOI: 10.1096/fj.11-181982]
  - 120 **Goldberg IJ**, Huang LS, Huggins LA, Yu S, Nagareddy PR, Scanlan TS, Ehrenkranz JR. Thyroid hormone reduces cholesterol via a non-LDL receptor-mediated pathway. *Endocrinology* 2012; **153**: 5143-5149 [PMID: 22948212 DOI: 10.1210/en.2012-1572]
  - 121 **Grasselli E**, Canesi L, Voci A, De Matteis R, Demori I, Fugassa E, Vergani L. Effects of 3,5-diiodo-L-thyronine administration on the liver of high fat diet-fed rats. *Exp Biol Med (Maywood)* 2008; **233**: 549-557 [PMID: 18375830 DOI: 10.3181/0710-RM-266]
  - 122 **Picard F**, Kurtev M, Chung N, Topark-Ngarm A, Senawong T, Machado De Oliveira R, Leid M, McBurney MW, Guarante L. Sirt1 promotes fat mobilization in white adipocytes by repressing PPAR-gamma. *Nature* 2004; **429**: 771-776 [PMID: 15175761]
  - 123 **Rodgers JT**, Lerin C, Haas W, Gygi SP, Spiegelman BM, Puigserver P. Nutrient control of glucose homeostasis through a complex of PGC-1alpha and SIRT1. *Nature* 2005; **434**: 113-118 [PMID: 15744310]
  - 124 **Baur JA**, Pearson KJ, Price NL, Jamieson HA, Lerin C, Kalra A, Prabhu VV, Allard JS, Lopez-Lluch G, Lewis K, Pistell PJ, Poosala S, Becker KG, Boss O, Gwinn D, Wang M, Ramaswamy S, Fishbein KW, Spencer RG, Lakatta EG, Le Couteur D, Shaw RJ, Navas P, Puigserver P, Ingram DK, de Cabo R, Sinclair DA. Resveratrol improves health and survival of mice on a high-calorie diet. *Nature* 2006; **444**: 337-342 [PMID: 17086191]
  - 125 **Lagouge M**, Argmann C, Gerhart-Hines Z, Meziane H, Lerin C, Daussin F, Messadeq N, Milne J, Lambert P, Elliott P, Geny B, Laakso M, Puigserver P, Auwerx J. Resveratrol improves mitochondrial function and protects against metabolic disease by activating SIRT1 and PGC-1alpha. *Cell* 2006; **127**: 1109-1122 [PMID: 17112576]
  - 126 **Gerhart-Hines Z**, Rodgers JT, Bare O, Lerin C, Kim SH, Mostoslavsky R, Alt FW, Wu Z, Puigserver P. Metabolic control of muscle mitochondrial function and fatty acid oxidation through SIRT1/PGC-1alpha. *EMBO J* 2007; **26**: 1913-1923 [PMID: 17347648]
  - 127 **Feige JN**, Lagouge M, Canto C, Strehle A, Houten SM, Milne JC, Lambert PD, Matakci C, Elliott PJ, Auwerx J. Specific SIRT1 activation mimics low energy levels and protects against diet-induced metabolic disorders by enhancing fat oxidation. *Cell Metab* 2008; **8**: 347-358 [PMID: 19046567 DOI: 10.1016/j.cmet.2008.08.017]
  - 128 **Grasselli E**, Voci A, Canesi L, Goglia F, Ravera S, Panfoli I, Gallo G, Vergani L. Non-receptor-mediated actions are responsible for the lipid-lowering effects of iodothyronines in FaO rat hepatoma cells. *J Endocrinol* 2011; **210**: 59-69 [PMID: 21508094 DOI: 10.1530/JOE-11-0074]
  - 129 **Cioffi F**, Zambad SP, Chhipa L, Senese R, Busiello RA, Tuli D, Munshi S, Moreno M, Lombardi A, Gupta RC, Chauthaiwale V, Dutt C, de Lange P, Silvestri E, Lanni A, Goglia F. TRC150094, a novel functional analog of iodothyronines, reduces adiposity by increasing energy expenditure and fatty acid oxidation in rats receiving a high-fat diet. *FASEB J* 2010; **24**: 3451-3461 [PMID: 20453112 DOI: 10.1096/fj.10-157115]
  - 130 **Silvestri E**, Glinni D, Cioffi F, Moreno M, Lombardi A, de Lange P, Senese R, Ceccarelli M, Salzano AM, Scaloni A, Lanni A, Goglia F. Metabolic effects of the iodothyronine functional analogue TRC150094 on the liver and skeletal muscle of high-fat diet fed overweight rats: an integrated proteomic study. *Mol Biosyst* 2012; **8**: 1987-2000 [PMID: 22543897 DOI: 10.1039/c2mb25055a]
  - 131 **Zambad SP**, Munshi S, Dubey A, Gupta R, Busiello RA, Lanni A, Goglia F, Gupta RC, Chauthaiwale V, Dutt C. TRC150094 attenuates progression of nontraditional cardiovascular risk factors associated with obesity and type 2 diabetes in obese ZSF1 rats. *Diabetes Metab Syndr Obes* 2011; **4**: 5-16 [PMID: 21448317 DOI: 10.2147/DMSOTT.S15323]
  - 132 **Grattagliano I**, de Bari O, Bernardo TC, Oliveira PJ, Wang DQ, Portincasa P. Role of mitochondria in nonalcoholic fatty liver disease--from origin to propagation. *Clin Biochem* 2012; **45**: 610-618 [PMID: 22484459 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinbiochem.2012.03.024]
  - 133 **Cioffi F**, Senese R, Lanni A, Goglia F. Thyroid hormones and mitochondria: with a brief look at derivatives and analogues. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2013; **379**: 51-61 [PMID: 23769708 DOI: 10.1016/j.mce.2013.06.006]
  - 134 **Goglia F**, Torresani J, Bugli P, Barletta A, Liverini G. In

- vitro binding of triiodothyronine to rat liver mitochondria. *Pflugers Arch* 1981; **390**: 120-124 [PMID: 7195560]
- 135 **Wrutniak-Cabello C**, Casas F, Cabello G. Thyroid hormone action in mitochondria. *J Mol Endocrinol* 2001; **26**: 67-77 [PMID: 11174855]
  - 136 **Psarra AM**, Solakidi S, Sekeris CE. The mitochondrion as a primary site of action of steroid and thyroid hormones: presence and action of steroid and thyroid hormone receptors in mitochondria of animal cells. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2006; **246**: 21-33 [PMID: 16388892]
  - 137 **Gaspari M**, Larsson NG, Gustafsson CM. The transcription machinery in mammalian mitochondria. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2004; **1659**: 148-152 [PMID: 15576046]
  - 138 **Scarpulla RC**. Nuclear control of respiratory gene expression in mammalian cells. *J Cell Biochem* 2006; **97**: 673-683 [PMID: 16329141]

**P- Reviewers:** Grattagliano I, Liu EQ, Makishima M  
**S- Editor:** Song XX **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Zhang DN



## Management of gastric variceal bleeding: Role of endoscopy and endoscopic ultrasound

Mohit Girotra, Saikiran Raghavapuram, Rtika R Abraham, Mrinal Pahwa, Archna R Pahwa, Rayburn F Rego

Mohit Girotra, Rayburn F Rego, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Medicine, University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences (UAMS), Little Rock, AR 72202, United States

Saikiran Raghavapuram, Department of Medicine, University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences (UAMS), Little Rock, AR 72202, United States

Rtika R Abraham, Department of Geriatrics, University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences (UAMS), Little Rock, AR 72202, United States

Mrinal Pahwa, Department of Surgery, Sir Ganga Ram Hospital, New Delhi 110060, India

Archna R Pahwa, Department of Pathology, Lady Hardinge Medical College (LHMC), New Delhi 110001, India

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this work.

Correspondence to: Mohit Girotra, MD, Division of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, Department of Medicine, University of Arkansas for Medical Sciences (UAMS), 4301 W. Markham Street, Shorey S8-68, Mailslot # 567, Little Rock, AR 72202, United States. [mgirotra@uams.edu](mailto:mgirotra@uams.edu)

Telephone: +1-501-6865175 Fax: +1-501-6866248

Received: October 29, 2013 Revised: February 11, 2014

Accepted: February 16, 2014

Published online: March 27, 2014

Sclerotherapy; Management; Transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt; Endoscopic ultrasound; Balloon-occluded retrograde transvenous obliteration; Endoscopic variceal obliteration

**Core tip:** This mini-review addresses endoscopic management principles for gastric variceal bleeding. Endoscopic variceal obliteration (EVO) with tissue adhesives is the currently accepted strategy for controlling bleeding and eradicating gastric varices (GVs). EVO is deemed better than both variceal ligation and sclerotherapy in randomized controlled trials. One unsettled issue with EVO is if routine reinjection is better than reinjection in case of rebleeding. The experience with combination treatments is still premature. For secondary prophylaxis, EVO, transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt or beta-blocker use is recommended. Emerging use of EUS provides optimism of better diagnosis, improved classification, innovative management strategies and confirmatory tool for eradication of GV.

### Abstract

Gastric varices (GVs) are notorious to bleed massively and often difficult to manage with conventional techniques. This mini-review addresses endoscopic management principles for gastric variceal bleeding, including limitations of ligation and sclerotherapy and merits of endoscopic variceal obliteration. The article also discusses how emerging use of endoscopic ultrasound provides optimism of better diagnosis, improved classification, innovative management strategies and confirmatory tool for eradication of GV.

© 2014 Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. All rights reserved.

**Key words:** Gastric; Varices; Endoscopy; Ligation;

Girotra M, Raghavapuram S, Abraham RR, Pahwa M, Pahwa AR, Rego RF. Management of gastric variceal bleeding: Role of endoscopy and endoscopic ultrasound. *World J Hepatol* 2014; 6(3): 130-136 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v6/i3/130.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v6.i3.130>

### INTRODUCTION

The natural history of gastric varices (GVs) is less understood than that of esophageal varices (EVs). GV may be seen in 18%-70% of the patients with portal hypertension (PHT) and are probable source of bleeding in 10%-36% of patients with acute variceal bleeding (AVB)<sup>[1-3]</sup>. Isolated GV (IGV), without EVs, are seen in 5%-12% of patients with PHT<sup>[1-3]</sup>. They are also commonly seen in patients with non-cirrhotic portal hypertension (NCPHT),

especially with splenic vein thrombosis (SVT). They are more commonly associated with shunts than EVs, most commonly spleno-renal shunt, and their management is quite different from that of EVs.

## CLASSIFICATIONS

GVs are commonly classified according to Sarin's classification<sup>[4,5]</sup> based on location and direction of blood flow: GOV1 (Gastro-Oesophageal Varices) are the most common (74% of all GV) and consist of the esophageal varices extending along the lesser curvature of stomach; GOV2 are the extension of the esophageal varices along the greater curvature near the fundus; IGV1 are isolated gastric varices localized to fundus, without any associated esophageal varices. These arise from spleno-renal or gastro-renal shunts where the feeding vessel arises from the splenic hilum and drains in to left renal vein through gastric cardia/fundus veins. GOV2 and IGV1 are sometimes together called "fundic varices". IGV2 are the isolated gastric varices present elsewhere other than the fundus, which drain in a similar fashion into left renal vein but with multiple tributaries. It is reported that fundal varices (GOV2 and IGV1), though less common than GOV1 varices, are noted to account for 80% of patients with bleeding GV.

Hashizume *et al*<sup>[6]</sup> proposed an alternate classification of GV's based on endoscopic findings, taking into account their shape (tortuous = F1, nodular = F2, and tumorous = F3), location (anterior = La, posterior = Lp, lesser curvature = Ll, greater curvature = Lg of the cardia, and fundic area = Lf) and color (white = Cw or red = Cr) and further emphasized on presence of glossy, thin-walled focal redness on the varix called as red color spot (RC spot) as a marker of impending bleeding risk<sup>[6]</sup>.

## BLEEDING RISK OF GVS

Although GV's are known to bleed less frequently than the EVs, however when they do, they bleed massively and are difficult to achieve primary hemostasis, with a mortality rate of 10%-30%<sup>[4,5]</sup>. Their chance of re-bleeding is high (35% to 90%) after spontaneous remission and 22%-37% with the glue technique<sup>[4,5]</sup>. The chance of variceal bleeding is driven by the pressure changes rather than hemostatic forces. The pressures in the GV's are lower than the in the EVs because of their larger size and more frequent presence of the shunts like spleno-renal<sup>[7,8]</sup>. Despite this, their rupture is more devastating because of the fact that the wall stress increases dramatically even with small rise in the portal pressures due to their larger radius. When there is increase in transmural pressure, the variceal size increases and wall thickness decreases, which leads to rupture<sup>[7,8]</sup>. The factors which predict hemorrhage in EVs also govern GV's: most importantly the size of the varices (15% in patients with large varices, which are defined as > 10 mm), decompensated cirrhosis and endoscopic presence of the red wale sign. Another factor

implicated in increase in incidence and/or size of fundic varices and possible bleeding is the treatment of EVs by either endoscopic variceal ligation (EVL) or endoscopic sclerotherapy (EST)<sup>[9]</sup>. The plausible explanation is that after treatment the existing collaterals are not sufficient enough to decompress the portal pressure causing an increased incidence of fundic varices.

## GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF MANAGEMENT OF BLEEDING GVS

The preliminary management of bleeding GV's is the same as any other variceal bleeding<sup>[1-3]</sup>. Fluid resuscitation, airway protection, antibiotic administration for the bacterial peritonitis prophylaxis and use of vasoactive agents like octreotide and acid suppressant agents like proton pump inhibitors form cornerstone of initial management. Cautious administration of the blood products (to achieve a target of hemoglobin level between 7-8 g/dL) is advocated as there is potential risk of increased re-bleeding if the portal pressures increase due to repeated transfusions. A schematic of management algorithm of GV's is presented in Figure 1.

Treatment options for acute GV bleeding are varied and include medical, surgical, endoscopic, and endovascular approaches<sup>[1-3]</sup>. Two general methods exist to deal with bleeding GV's: directly exclude the varices from the porto-systemic system or indirectly decrease the pressure in the varices by decompressing the portal system.

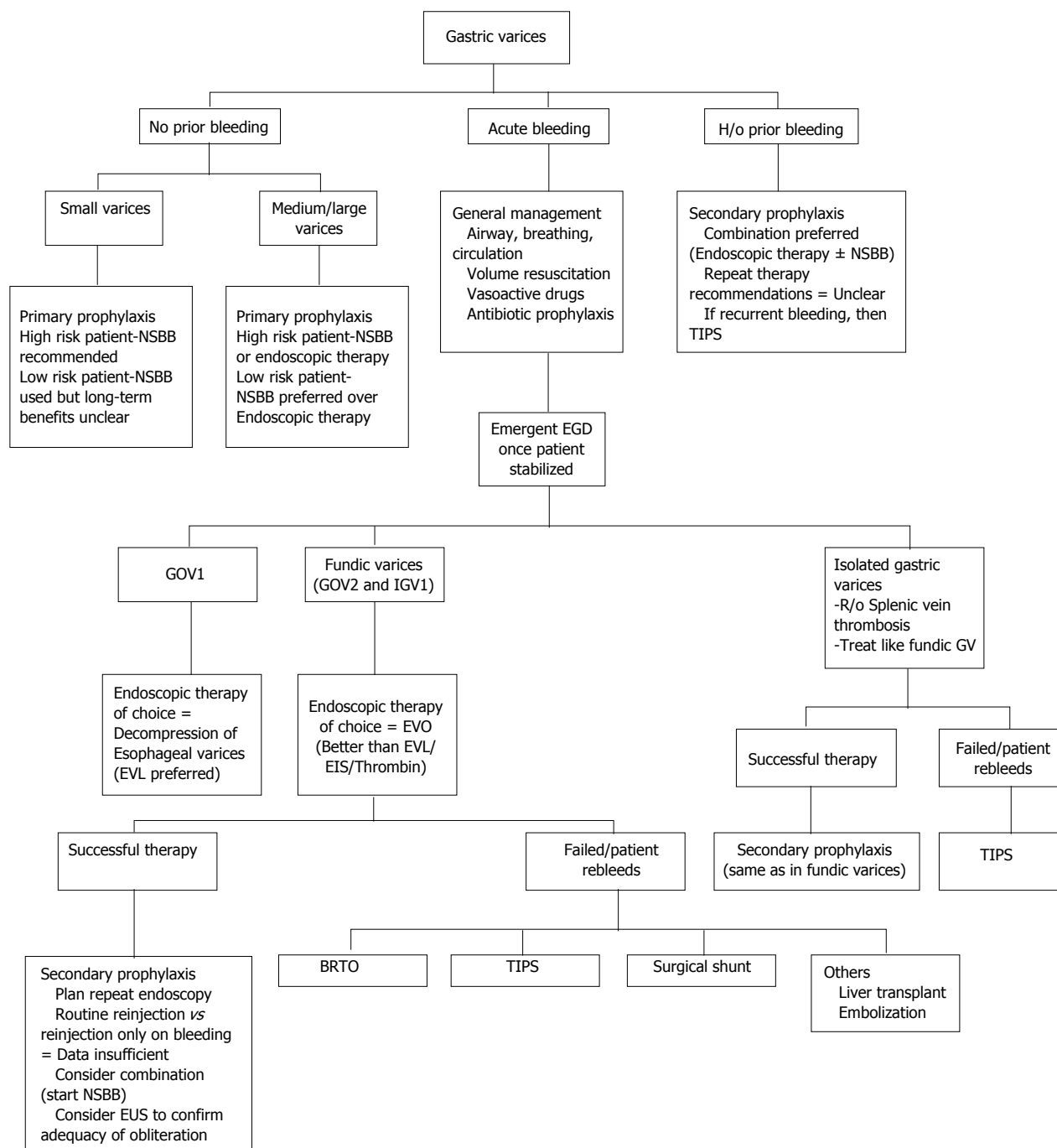
### Direct approach

Variceal management by direct endoscopy or endoscopic ultrasound.

**Role of endoscopy:** Once the patient is deemed stable from airway and circulation standpoint, an esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD) should be performed, which might show active bleeding or reveal stigmata of recent bleeding, in addition to qualify type of GV's and concomitant presence of EVs or PHG<sup>[1-3]</sup>.

Several endoscopic techniques have been tested to control acute gastric variceal bleeding with varying successes. However, the universal phenomena is that majority of the methods used in controlling the bleeding EVs are difficult to practice in GV's and are inconsistently successful. These include endoscopic injection sclerotherapy (EIS) and esophageal variceal ligation (EVL). The varying success of these methods may be owing to different physiology and size of GV's which pose technical problems.

**GV ligation:** The main indications for ligation in management of acute GV bleeding is banding of GOV1 varices, which are extensions of EVs into the stomach along the lesser curvature or as salvage strategy if other modalities are not available<sup>[10]</sup>. Studies suggest good hemostasis efficacy and comparable re-bleeding rates of GOV1 ligation to EVL of EVs. There is limited role for ligation



**Figure 1 Proposed management algorithm for gastric varices.** High risk patient: Child Pugh class B or C or endoscopic presence of red wale sign; Low Risk Patient: Child Pugh class A and no endoscopic high-risk features. GV: Gastric varices; EVO: Endoscopic variceal obliteration; EVL: Endoscopic variceal ligation; EIS: Endoscopic injection sclerotherapy; NSBB: Non specific beta blocker; BRTO: Balloon-occluded retrograde transvenous obliteration; TIPS: Trans-jugular intra-hepatic porto-systemic shunt; GOV: Gastro-oesophageal varices; IGV: Isolated gastric varices.

in management of bleeding fundic varices<sup>[1-3]</sup>. In head-to-head studies, EVL was less effective than endoscopic obturation by injection of cyanoacrylate for hemostasis of large GVs<sup>[11]</sup>, and had higher re-bleeding rates too<sup>[12]</sup>. Smaller studies have attempted improvisation of ligation methods to increase its success in GV, like using detachable snares and elastic bands or in combination with sclerotherapy, however these experimental techniques are yet to be implemented universally<sup>[13,14]</sup>.

**Endoscopic injection sclerotherapy:** Fundic varices (IGV1 and IGV2) are wider and have larger volume, needing large quantity of sclerosant which is susceptible to being washed away, potentially leading to systemic (esp. pulmonary) embolization, and may also lead to increased chances of ulceration at injection site. Before the advent of newer techniques, sclerotherapy of GVs using alcohol or tetradecyl sulfate was common and was associated with decent initial hemostasis rates (up to 67%-100%),

however the higher frequency of re-bleeding mainly due to post-procedure ulceration severely limited its long-term success<sup>[10]</sup>. Furthermore, the risk of complications including fever, retrosternal chest pain, temporary dysphagia and pleural effusions was unacceptably higher with EIS<sup>[15]</sup>. Overall, the success of EIS is questionable in management of acute GV bleeding<sup>[16]</sup> and hence is not the preferred method in any of the guidelines.

**Endoscopic variceal obturation:** Endoscopic variceal obturation (EVO) using tissue adhesives like glue, cyanoacrylate or histoacryl has provided a positive direction to management of fundic varices, which was always a challenge. Cyanoacrylate is a polymer which upon coming in contact with blood polymerises instantly leading to obliteration of varices. It is called “obliteration” and not “eradication” since the varices may be still visible post-treatment.

EVO with N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate has been the advocated first-line method in managing the gastric varices especially fundic varices<sup>[1-3]</sup>. Kang *et al*<sup>[17]</sup> performed EVO with cyanoacrylate in 127 patients with GVs (100 active bleeding and 27 prophylactically) and reported a primary hemostasis rate of 98.4% (1 session-98 patients, 2 sessions-25 patients,  $\geq 3$  sessions-4 patients), with a recurrent bleeding rate of 18.1 % at 1 year<sup>[17]</sup>. Several studies have compared EVO head-to-head with EIS or EVL to conclude the favorable outcomes of EVO in terms of initial hemostasis, and lesser re-bleeding and complications<sup>[11,12,18-20]</sup>. Furthermore, re-bleeding rates after EVO were found to be comparable to transjugular intrahepatic porto-systemic shunt (TIPS) in patients with acute GV bleeding, suggesting this technique may be equally efficacious in secondary prevention and creating opportunity of therapy in patients in who TIPS is contraindicated for encephalopathy reasons<sup>[21]</sup>. Few studies have advocated using dynamic CT scan prior to EVO to increase the detection of feeding vessels, assessment of direction of blood flow, presence of shunts, in an attempt to increase efficacy and minimize complications of EVO technique<sup>[22]</sup>, although this is not universally practiced.

Although EVO is clearly a superior technique than EIS or EVL for bleeding GVs, it is not free of technical difficulties (para-variceal injection, needle sticking in the varix, intra-peritoneal injection leading to peritonitis and adherence of the glue to the endoscope) or complications (fever, para-variceal injection with mucosal necrosis and bleeding, embolization into the renal vein, IVC, pulmonary or systemic vessels and retro-gastric abscesses)<sup>[12,18-20]</sup>. However, emerging literature supports preference of distilled water over saline to dilute cyanoacrylate to decrease coagulation and use of standardized techniques of tissue adhesive preparation and delivery to decrease rates of these complications<sup>[23]</sup>. In case of large gastric varix, it is advised to begin tissue adhesive injection from bottom to dome to minimize risk of bleeding if injected directly at high pressure-high flow dome area. Liu *et al*<sup>[24]</sup> reported an interesting scenario which devel-

oped when EVO of GVs led to hemorrhage from EVs due to embolism of the glue into the EV thus increasing the pressure. This was not amenable to EV ligation due to presence of foreign body (glue) and was managed with cyanoacrylate injection into EVs to achieve hemostasis and authors rightly cautioned endoscopists to treat EVs in the same setting as EVO of GVs to prevent such a complication<sup>[24]</sup>.

Another major difference between EVO and other endoscopic techniques is that variceal obliteration of the GVs is not quite obvious after cyanoacrylate injection, and hence adequacy of EVO is controversial. Most often GVs are probed with an endoscope and the induration is accepted as a sign of inadequate obliteration with the need to inject more tissue adhesive till it is “hard” to palpate. Improved radiology (use of CT portography)<sup>[22]</sup> and newer endoscopic techniques have made this EVO adequacy assessment easier, as discussed later in this article. Notably, EVO has recently been shown to be superior to beta blocker therapy for primary prophylaxis of GVs and hence is being advocated<sup>[25]</sup>. Evidence regarding efficacy of the glue in pregnant females and in children is still emerging and premature, and so is data on newer combination EVO-sclerotherapy modalities<sup>[26]</sup>.

**Novel EVO materials:** Endoscopists are trying several materials to achieve hemostasis in technically challenging situations, like successful use of hemostatic powder in situation with failed EVO with cyanoacrylate glue and contraindication to TIPS due to dilated cardiomyopathy<sup>[27]</sup>. Thrombin was used by Yang *et al*<sup>[28]</sup> and Ramesh *et al*<sup>[29]</sup> in separate studies to successfully achieve initial hemostasis 100% and 92% patients, with re-bleeding rates of 27% and 0% respectively. Thrombin helps in clotting by converting fibrinogen to fibrin and promotes platelet aggregation as well. Although these studies were limited by their patient size (12 and 13 patients respectively)<sup>[28,29]</sup>, and did not report any untoward thrombo-embolic events, the concern for thrombin leakage into systemic circulation and potentially causing disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) or systemic embolization still remains. It is currently not being advocated due to lack of adequate data.

**Role of endoscopic ultrasound:** It is common knowledge that endoscopic ultrasound (EUS) enables the visualization of esophago-gastric varices and other venous collaterals viz. peri- and para-esophageal collateral veins and perforating veins, in patients with PHT, and can be useful to assess the patency of the portal venous system<sup>[30]</sup>. There has been an attempt in 1993 to classify gastric varices endosonographically by Boustière *et al*<sup>[31]</sup>, which considered size of GVs and gastric wall abnormalities (Table 1), and inferred that while endoscopy graded EVs better, EUS was a better tool to classify GVs and early signs of portal gastropathy. The other EUS features of portal hypertension, in addition to EVs and GVs, may include dilatation of the azygos vein, splenic vein

**Table 1 Endoscopic ultrasound classification of gastric varices: Proposed by Boustiere *et al* in 1993**

Endoscopic ultrasound classification of gastric varices	
1: Size of gastric varices	Grade 0 (none) Grade 1 (small or non-confluent varices < 5 mm) Grade 2 (large or confluent varices ≥ 5 mm)
2: Abnormalities of gastric wall	Grade 0 (none) Grade 1 (thickening and brilliance of the third hyperechogenic layer with or without fine internal anechogenic structures) Grade 2 (visible vessels in the third layer which deform the entire wall, with penetrating varices)

and portal vein, increased diameter of the thoracic duct, thickening of gastric mucosa and submucosa, presence of portal hypertensive gastropathy, and the presence of rectal varices<sup>[30,32]</sup>. In addition, EUS combined with color Doppler imaging enabled visualization of shunts viz. gastro-renal shunt in one report<sup>[33]</sup>. Furthermore, EUS doppler helps characterize gastric submucosal lesions better than EGDs before proceeding to the biopsy of potential GV.

Role of EUS in risk estimation for GV bleeding is a field of growing interest. EUS probes can be used to measure size of varices (diameter), and furthermore to estimate variceal wall thickness which is deemed as a better predictor of bleeding than varices diameter alone<sup>[34]</sup>. Intra-variceal pressure measurement may be a better surrogate for risk of bleeding, which can be accomplished by direct variceal puncture which is not practiced because of invasiveness. Although data is slim, there has been an attempt looking at EUS guided EV pressure recording, to better predict risk of bleeding, and it has been shown to have reasonable correlation with hepatic venous pressure gradient (HVPG)<sup>[35]</sup>. Finally, high risk stigmata like red hematocytic spot can be visualized with EUS<sup>[36]</sup>.

EUS-assisted injection sclerotherapy for both gastric<sup>[37]</sup> and esophageal varices<sup>[38]</sup> is effective, achieving high eradication and low recurrence rates in long-term follow-up. In fact the risk of re-bleeding after EUS directed sclerotherapy is reportedly lower than endoscopic technique. Recently additional attention has been diverted towards EUS delivered therapies to control bleeding in acute variceal bleeding patients, using unique agents like adhesive tissue (histoacryl)<sup>[39]</sup>, thrombin<sup>[40]</sup> and EUS-guided coil injection for gastric<sup>[41]</sup> and ectopic duodenal varices<sup>[42]</sup>. Last but not the least, EUS finds its utility in confirmation of adequacy of EVO of gastric varices, eliminating the need for inept endoscope probing assessment and thus increasing overall efficacy of EVO technique<sup>[43]</sup>. A recent study from Taiwan used miniature ultrasound probe (MUP) sonography in 34 patients who underwent cyanoacrylate EVO therapy for acute GV bleeding, during follow-up endoscopy session to assess adequacy of obturation and reinjection if necessary. The authors demonstrated a significantly greater

free-of-rebleeding rate and trend towards better survival for patients in MUP group compared with conventional endoscopy group<sup>[43]</sup>. Although these advances bring a sound of promise, EUS probe which has a larger diameter compared to conventional scope, in addition to GV intervention is certainly a high-risk procedure. Using a mini-probe may counter some of this added disadvantage but non-availability of pediatric sizes is still a limitation. Furthermore, future studies need to compare radial and linear EUS scopes in diagnosis and management of varices.

### Indirect approach

Decreasing portal pressure - either surgically or percutaneously by establishing a TIPS.

**Role of TIPS:** Porto-systemic shunts such as TIPS are typically advocated as second-line acute therapy (after endoscopic management) to prevent re-bleeding of varices<sup>[1-3]</sup>. Although decreasing portal pressure is considered effective in reducing the bleeding rate of EVs, it is inconsistently effective for GVs, which tend to occur and bleed at lower portal pressures<sup>[21,44]</sup>. Also there is discordance between decreased hepato-portal gradient with TIPS and actual decrease in GV re-bleeding. In addition, TIPS has its own limitations including worsening of encephalopathy or shunt occlusion, which can lead to recurrence of hemorrhage, and surveillance for patency.

**Role of advanced radiological procedures:** If all endoscopic techniques and TIPS fail or if TIPS is contraindicated, then the next step would be balloon-occluded retrograde transvenous obliteration (BRTO)<sup>[1-3]</sup>, which is a popular technique in Japan, and allowing modulation of flow within the varices. BRTO was popularized and named by Kanagawa *et al*<sup>[45]</sup> in 1996, this technique optimize the action of the sclerosing agent by inducing stagnation in the gastric varices, thereby allowing maximal sclerosant dwell time to cause endothelial sclerosis and vascular thrombosis. The discussion of technique, advantages and complications of BRTO is beyond the scope of current mini-review, but one of the emerging fronts in management of acute GV bleeding.

## CONCLUSION

GVs are notorious to bleed massively and often difficult to manage with conventional techniques. EVO with cyanoacrylate glue injection is currently the most favored for being superior to variceal ligation or sclerotherapy in achieving hemostasis in acute gastric variceal bleeding. Endoscopists must remain cognizant about the possible complications of tissue adhesive injections and strive for standardization of EVO techniques to minimize them. Novel techniques like use of thrombin, coil embolization are under investigation as alternatives to cyanoacrylate aiming for improved outcomes. TIPS and BRTO are advanced radiological procedures available as

salvage techniques in uncontrollable bleeding situations or when patients are not candidates or have failed endoscopic management. The role of EUS in the therapeutic algorithm for GV is still evolving. EUS is being used to confirm presence, size and location of GVs, to stratify the risk of re-bleeding, as a therapeutic tool to perform sclerotherapy or EVO, and to confirm eradication of GVs after EVO. Emerging use of EUS provides optimism of better diagnosis, improved classification, innovative management strategies and confirmatory tool for eradication of GVs.

## REFERENCES

- 1 **Garcia-Tsao G**, Sanyal AJ, Grace ND, Carey W. Prevention and management of gastroesophageal varices and variceal hemorrhage in cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2007; **46**: 922-938 [PMID: 17879356]
- 2 **Qureshi W**, Adler DG, Davila R, Egan J, Hirota W, Leighton J, Rajan E, Zuckerman MJ, Fanelli R, Wheeler-Harbaugh J, Baron TH, Faigel DO. ASGE Guideline: the role of endoscopy in the management of variceal hemorrhage, updated July 2005. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2005; **62**: 651-655 [PMID: 16246673 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2005.07.031]
- 3 **de Franchis R**. Revising consensus in portal hypertension: report of the Baveno V consensus workshop on methodology of diagnosis and therapy in portal hypertension. *J Hepatol* 2010; **53**: 762-768 [PMID: 20638742 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.06.004]
- 4 **Sarin SK**, Kumar A. Gastric varices: profile, classification, and management. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1989; **84**: 1244-1249 [PMID: 2679046]
- 5 **Sarin SK**, Lahoti D, Saxena SP, Murthy NS, Makwana UK. Prevalence, classification and natural history of gastric varices: a long-term follow-up study in 568 portal hypertension patients. *Hepatology* 1992; **16**: 1343-1349 [PMID: 1446890 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840160607]
- 6 **Hashizume M**, Kitano S, Yamaga H, Koyanagi N, Sugimachi K. Endoscopic classification of gastric varices. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1990; **36**: 276-280 [PMID: 2365213 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(90)71023-1]
- 7 **Polio J**, Groszmann RJ. Hemodynamic factors involved in the development and rupture of esophageal varices: a pathophysiologic approach to treatment. *Semin Liver Dis* 1986; **6**: 318-331 [PMID: 3544225 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1040614]
- 8 **Watanabe K**, Kimura K, Matsutani S, Ohto M, Okuda K. Portal hemodynamics in patients with gastric varices. A study in 230 patients with esophageal and/or gastric varices using portal vein catheterization. *Gastroenterology* 1988; **95**: 434-440 [PMID: 3391371]
- 9 **Yüksel O**, Köklü S, Arhan M, Yolcu OF, Ertuğrul I, Odemiş B, Altıparmak E, Sahin B. Effects of esophageal varice eradication on portal hypertensive gastropathy and fundal varices: a retrospective and comparative study. *Dig Dis Sci* 2006; **51**: 27-30 [PMID: 16416205 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-006-3078-2]
- 10 **Ryan BM**, Stockbrugger RW, Ryan JM. A pathophysiologic, gastroenterologic, and radiologic approach to the management of gastric varices. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **126**: 1175-1189 [PMID: 15057756 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2004.01.058]
- 11 **Lo GH**, Lai KH, Cheng JS, Chen MH, Chiang HT. A prospective, randomized trial of butyl cyanoacrylate injection versus band ligation in the management of bleeding gastric varices. *Hepatology* 2001; **33**: 1060-1064 [PMID: 11343232 DOI: 10/S0270-9139(01)86668-4]
- 12 **Tan PC**, Hou MC, Lin HC, Liu TT, Lee FY, Chang FY, Lee SD. A randomized trial of endoscopic treatment of acute gastric variceal hemorrhage: N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate injection versus band ligation. *Hepatology* 2006; **43**: 690-697 [PMID: 16557539 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21145]
- 13 **Lee MS**, Cho JY, Cheon YK, Ryu CB, Moon JH, Cho YD, Kim JO, Kim YS, Lee JS, Shim CS. Use of detachable snares and elastic bands for endoscopic control of bleeding from large gastric varices. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2002; **56**: 83-88 [PMID: 12085040 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2002.125104]
- 14 **Yoshida T**, Harada T, Shigemitsu T, Takeo Y, Miyazaki S, Okita K. Endoscopic management of gastric varices using a detachable snare and simultaneous endoscopic sclerotherapy and O-ring ligation. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1999; **14**: 730-735 [PMID: 10440220 DOI: 10.1046/j.1440-1746.1999.01941.x]
- 15 **Schuman BM**, Beckman JW, Tedesco FJ, Griffin JW, Assad RT. Complications of endoscopic injection sclerotherapy: a review. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1987; **82**: 823-830 [PMID: 3307389]
- 16 **Trudeau W**, Prindiville T. Endoscopic injection sclerosis in bleeding gastric varices. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1986; **32**: 264-268 [PMID: 3488937 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(86)71843-9]
- 17 **Kang EJ**, Jeong SW, Jang JY, Cho JY, Lee SH, Kim HG, Kim SG, Kim YS, Cheon YK, Cho YD, Kim HS, Kim BS. Long-term result of endoscopic Histoacryl (N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate) injection for treatment of gastric varices. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 1494-1500 [PMID: 21472110 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i11.1494]
- 18 **Sarin SK**, Jain AK, Jain M, Gupta R. A randomized controlled trial of cyanoacrylate versus alcohol injection in patients with isolated fundic varices. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 1010-1015 [PMID: 12003381 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.05622]
- 19 **Mishra SR**, Chander Sharma B, Kumar A, Sarin SK. Endoscopic cyanoacrylate injection versus beta-blocker for secondary prophylaxis of gastric variceal bleed: a randomised controlled trial. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 729-735 [PMID: 20551457 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.192039]
- 20 **Belletratti PJ**, Romagnuolo J, Hilsden RJ, Chen F, Kaplan B, Love J, Beck PL. Endoscopic management of gastric varices: efficacy and outcomes of gluing with N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate in a North American patient population. *Can J Gastroenterol* 2008; **22**: 931-936 [PMID: 19018339]
- 21 **Lo GH**, Liang HL, Chen WC, Chen MH, Lai KH, Hsu PI, Lin CK, Chan HH, Pan HB. A prospective, randomized controlled trial of transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic shunt versus cyanoacrylate injection in the prevention of gastric variceal rebleeding. *Endoscopy* 2007; **39**: 679-685 [PMID: 17661241 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-966591]
- 22 **Rice JP**, Lubner M, Taylor A, Spier BJ, Said A, Lucey MR, Musat A, Reichelderfer M, Pfau PR, Gopal DV. CT portography with gastric variceal volume measurements in the evaluation of endoscopic therapeutic efficacy of tissue adhesive injection into gastric varices: a pilot study. *Dig Dis Sci* 2011; **56**: 2466-2472 [PMID: 21336602]
- 23 **Seewald S**, Ang TL, Imazu H, Naga M, Omar S, Groth S, Seitz U, Zhong Y, Thonke F, Soehendra N. A standardized injection technique and regimen ensures success and safety of N-butyl-2-cyanoacrylate injection for the treatment of gastric fundal varices (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 447-454 [PMID: 18760173 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.02.050]
- 24 **Liu TT**, Hou MC, Lin HC, Chang FY, Lee SD. Esophageal impaction: a rare complication of tissue glue injection for gastric variceal bleeding. *Endoscopy* 2001; **33**: 905 [PMID: 11571692 DOI: 10.1055/s-2001-17334]
- 25 **Mishra SR**, Sharma BC, Kumar A, Sarin SK. Primary prophylaxis of gastric variceal bleeding comparing cyanoacrylate injection and beta-blockers: a randomized controlled trial. *J Hepatol* 2011; **54**: 1161-1167 [PMID: 21145834 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.09.031]
- 26 **Shi B**, Wu W, Zhu H, Wu YL. Successful endoscopic sclerotherapy for bleeding gastric varices with combined cyanoacrylate and aethoxysklerol. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**:

- 3598-3601 [PMID: 18567095 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.3598]
- 27 **Holster IL**, Poley JW, Kuipers EJ, Tjwa ET. Controlling gastric variceal bleeding with endoscopically applied hemostatic powder (Hemospray™). *J Hepatol* 2012; **57**: 1397-1398 [PMID: 22864337 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2012.07.024]
- 28 **Yang WL**, Tripathi D, Therapondos G, Todd A, Hayes PC. Endoscopic use of human thrombin in bleeding gastric varices. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2002; **97**: 1381-1385 [PMID: 12094854 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2002.05776.x]
- 29 **Ramesh J**, Limdi JK, Sharma V, Makin AJ. The use of thrombin injections in the management of bleeding gastric varices: a single-center experience. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **68**: 877-882 [PMID: 18534583 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2008.02.065]
- 30 **Caletti G**, Brocchi E, Baraldini M, Ferrari A, Gibilaro M, Barbara L. Assessment of portal hypertension by endoscopic ultrasonography. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1990; **36**: S21-S27 [PMID: 2184082 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2002.127697]
- 31 **Boustière C**, Dumas O, Jouffre C, Letard JC, Patouillard B, Etaix JP, Barthélémy C, Audigier JC. Endoscopic ultrasonography classification of gastric varices in patients with cirrhosis. Comparison with endoscopic findings. *J Hepatol* 1993; **19**: 268-272 [PMID: 8301060]
- 32 **Faigel DO**, Rosen HR, Sasaki A, Flora K, Benner K. EUS in cirrhotic patients with and without prior variceal hemorrhage in comparison with noncirrhotic control subjects. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2000; **52**: 455-462 [PMID: 11023560 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2000.107297]
- 33 **Kakutani H**, Hino S, Ikeda K, Mashiko T, Sumiyama K, Uchiyama Y, Kuramochi A, Kitamura Y, Matsuda K, Kawamura M, Tajiri H, Urashima M. Use of the curved linear-array echo endoscope to identify gastrosplenic shunts in patients with gastric fundal varices. *Endoscopy* 2004; **36**: 710-714 [PMID: 15280977 DOI: 10.1055/s-2004-825658]
- 34 **Jackson FW**, Adrain AL, Black M, Miller LS. Calculation of esophageal variceal wall tension by direct sonographic and manometric measurements. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1999; **50**: 247-251 [PMID: 10425421 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(99)70233-6]
- 35 **Pontes JM**, Leitão MC, Portela F, Nunes A, Freitas D. Endosonographic Doppler-guided manometry of esophageal varices: experimental validation and clinical feasibility. *Endoscopy* 2002; **34**: 966-972 [PMID: 12471540 DOI: 10.1055/s-2002-35840]
- 36 **Schiano TD**, Adrain AL, Vega KJ, Liu JB, Black M, Miller LS. High-resolution endoluminal sonography assessment of the hematocystic spots of esophageal varices. *Gastrointest Endosc* 1999; **49**: 424-427 [PMID: 10202053 DOI: 10.1016/S0016-5107(99)70037-4]
- 37 **Lee YT**, Chan FK, Ng EK, Leung VK, Law KB, Yung MY, Chung SC, Sung JJ. EUS-guided injection of cyanoacrylate for bleeding gastric varices. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2000; **52**: 168-174 [PMID: 10922086 DOI: 10.1067/mge.2000.107911]
- 38 **de Paulo GA**, Ardengh JC, Nakao FS, Ferrari AP. Treatment of esophageal varices: a randomized controlled trial comparing endoscopic sclerotherapy and EUS-guided sclerotherapy of esophageal collateral veins. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2006; **63**: 396-402; quiz 463 [PMID: 16500386 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2005.10.039]
- 39 **Romero-Castro R**, Pellicer-Bautista FJ, Jimenez-Saenz M, Marcos-Sanchez F, Caunedo-Alvarez A, Ortiz-Moyano C, Gomez-Parra M, Herrerias-Gutierrez JM. EUS-guided injection of cyanoacrylate in perforating feeding veins in gastric varices: results in 5 cases. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2007; **66**: 402-407 [PMID: 17643723 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.03.008]
- 40 **Krystallis C**, McAvoy NC, Wilson J, Hayes PC, Plevris JN. EUS-assisted thrombin injection for ectopic bleeding varices—a case report and review of the literature. *QJM* 2012; **105**: 355-358 [PMID: 21382928 DOI: 10.1093/qjmed/hcr030]
- 41 **Binmoeller KF**, Weiler F, Shah JN, Kim J. EUS-guided transesophageal treatment of gastric fundal varices with combined coiling and cyanoacrylate glue injection (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2011; **74**: 1019-1025 [PMID: 21889139]
- 42 **Levy MJ**, Wong Kee Song LM, Kendrick ML, Misra S, Gostout CJ. EUS-guided coil embolization for refractory ectopic variceal bleeding (with videos). *Gastrointest Endosc* 2008; **67**: 572-574 [PMID: 17997404 DOI: 10.1016/j.gie.2007.06.063]
- 43 **Liao SC**, Yang SS, Ko CW, Lien HC, Tung CF, Peng YC, Yeh HZ, Chang CS. A miniature ultrasound probe is useful in reducing rebleeding after endoscopic cyanoacrylate injection for hemorrhagic gastric varices. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2013; **48**: 1347-1353 [PMID: 24073667 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.2013.838995]
- 44 **Tripathi D**, Therapondos G, Jackson E, Redhead DN, Hayes PC. The role of the transjugular intrahepatic portosystemic stent shunt (TIPSS) in the management of bleeding gastric varices: clinical and haemodynamic correlations. *Gut* 2002; **51**: 270-274 [PMID: 12117893 DOI: 10.1136/gut.51.2.270]
- 45 **Kanagawa H**, Mima S, Kouyama H, Gotoh K, Uchida T, Okuda K. Treatment of gastric fundal varices by balloon-occluded retrograde transvenous obliteration. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 1996; **11**: 51-58 [PMID: 8672742 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.1996.tb00010.x]

**P- Reviewers:** Bayraktar Y, Harmanci O, Mesquita RA, Picchio M, Stephenne X **S- Editor:** Song XX **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Zhang DN



## Role of intrahepatic innervation in regulating the activity of liver cells

Letitia Adela Maria Streba, Cristin Constantin Vere, Alin Gabriel Ionescu, Costin Teodor Streba, Ion Rogoveanu

Letitia Adela Maria Streba, Alin Gabriel Ionescu, University of Medicine and Pharmacy of Craiova, 200348 Craiova, Romania  
Cristin Constantin Vere, Costin Teodor Streba, Ion Rogoveanu, Research Center of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, University of Medicine and Pharmacy of Craiova, 200348 Craiova, Romania

Author contributions: Streba LAM and Vere CC made an equal contribution in preparing the manuscript and share first authorship; Ionescu AG and Streba CT performed part of the literature research; Streba CT critically revised the text; Rogoveanu I supervised the writing of the manuscript.

Correspondence to: Costin Teodor Streba, MD, PhD, MSc, Research Center of Gastroenterology and Hepatology, University of Medicine and Pharmacy of Craiova, St. Petru Rares No. 2-4, 200348 Craiova, Romania. [costinstreba@gmail.com](mailto:costinstreba@gmail.com)

Telephone: +40-722-389906 Fax: +40-351-401376

Received: September 28, 2013 Revised: November 5, 2013

Accepted: January 15, 2014

Published online: March 27, 2014

**Key words:** Liver innervations; Hepatocytes; Neurotransmitters; Cellular receptors

**Core tip:** Liver innervation comprises sympathetic, parasympathetic and peptidergic nerve fibers, organized as either afferent or efferent nerves with different origins and roles. Their anatomy and physiology have been studied in the past 30 years, with different results published over time. Hepatocytes are the main cell population of the liver, making up almost 80% of the total liver volume. The interaction between hepatocytes and nerve fibers is accomplished through a wealth of neurotransmitters and signaling pathways.

Streba LAM, Vere CC, Ionescu AG, Streba CT, Rogoveanu I. Role of intrahepatic innervation in regulating the activity of liver cells. *World J Hepatol* 2014; 6(3): 137-143 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v6/i3/137.htm>  
DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v6.i3.137>

### Abstract

Liver innervation comprises sympathetic, parasympathetic and peptidergic nerve fibers, organized as either afferent or efferent nerves with different origins and roles. Their anatomy and physiology have been studied in the past 30 years, with different results published over time. Hepatocytes are the main cell population of the liver, making up almost 80% of the total liver volume. The interaction between hepatocytes and nerve fibers is accomplished through a wealth of neurotransmitters and signaling pathways. In this short review, we have taken the task of condensing the most important data related to how the nervous system interacts with the liver and especially with the hepatocyte population, how it influences their metabolism and functions, and how different receptors and transmitters are involved in this complex process.

© 2014 Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. All rights reserved.

### INTRODUCTION

Innervation of the liver comprises efferent and afferent nerves containing sympathetic, parasympathetic and peptidergic fibers. Sympathetic nerve fibers derive from splanchnic nerves and the parasympathetic counterparts have a vagal origin. Fibers derived from splanchnic, vagus and sometimes the phrenic nerves enter the liver through the hilum, together with the hepatic artery, portal vein and bile duct. Some nerve fibers do not accompany hepatic vessels and enter the liver *via* the small omentum or the hepatic vein. Sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves form two separate plexus but communicate with each other: the anterior plexus placed around the hepatic artery, consisting of nerve fibers with their origin in the celiac ganglion and posterior vagus nerve, and the posterior plexus located around the portal vein and bile duct,

formed by fibers from the celiac ganglion and the right vagus<sup>[1]</sup>. Nervous fibers which are distributed to the hepatic parenchyma derive from a corresponding nervous plexus and their intrahepatic distribution differ according to species<sup>[2,3]</sup>.

In the human liver, nerve endings are located in the hepatic lobules<sup>[4]</sup>, which consists of hepatocytes and non-parenchymal cells. Unlike hepatocytes, which occupy almost 80% of liver volume and have numerous functions, non-parenchymal liver cells occupy only 6.5% of the liver, although representing 40% of total liver cells<sup>[5]</sup>.

Hepatocytes are arranged as cellular cords with a radial disposition that converges towards the centrilobular vein, being separated by sinusoidal capillaries. Between hepatocyte cell cords and sinusoid capillaries there is an interstitial space, a perisinusoidal called a Disse space. This space is formed by a fine network of reticulin fibers, a support for the sinusoids, non myelinated nerve fibers and mesenchymal type cells<sup>[6]</sup>. Non-parenchymal cells are located in the liver sinusoidal compartment. The hepatic sinusoidal wall consists of three cell types: sinusoidal endothelial cells (SECs), Kupffer cells (KCs) and hepatic stellate cells (HSCs)<sup>[5]</sup>. Most nerve endings from intralobular spaces are located in Disse spaces<sup>[4,7-12]</sup>, where they make close contact with HSCs, SECs and hepatocytes<sup>[7,8,10]</sup>.

## NERVOUS INFLUX TRANSMISSION MECHANISM INTO HEPATOCYTES

Hepatocytes serve multiple functions, such as synthesis, storage, metabolism and transformation of carbohydrates, amino acids, proteins, lipids, vitamins and detoxification, conjugation and excretion of exo- and endogenous substances. During liver regeneration, hepatocytes initiate cell proliferation, maintain metabolic function of the liver, secrete interleukin-6 (IL-6), proteases, protease inhibitors and hepatocyte growth factor<sup>[13]</sup>.

The liver receives both sympathetic and parasympathetic nerve fibers; however, the innervation that hepatocytes receive varies by species. Thus, in the cat, rabbit, guinea pig liver as well as primate liver, it appears that nerve endings are connected to all hepatocytes, unlike rats and mice in which only hepatic cells in the portal region appear to be in contact with intrahepatic nerve endings<sup>[14]</sup>.

Nerve fiber communication with hepatocytes can be accomplished by several mechanisms (Figure 1): (1) hepatocyte direct innervation mediated by norepinephrine and acetylcholine, neuropeptides [neuropeptide Y, galanin (NPY), vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), calcitonin gene-related peptide (CGRP), *etc.*], purines [adenosine triphosphate or adenosine (ATP)]; (2) signals intercellular transmission using gap type junctions; and (3) sinusoidal capillary cells innervation which interact with hepatocytes through eicosanoids (prostaglandins, leukotrienes), cytokines (necrotic factor, IL-6, IL-1) and other chemical mediators (endothelin, nitric oxide).

## Direct innervation of hepatocytes

Nerve transmission to hepatocytes is achieved through neurotransmitters such as norepinephrine and acetylcholine, neuropeptides, such as NPY, galanin, VIP and CGRP, or purine derivatives as ATP and adenosine.

The liver is stimulated by norepinephrine and epinephrine released from intrahepatic nerve endings but also derived through the blood from the adrenal glands. Catecholamines act in the liver on  $\alpha 1$ -,  $\alpha 2$ - and  $\beta 2$ -adrenergic receptors<sup>[15-17]</sup>. Norepinephrine is removed from the site of action by intrahepatic nerve ending uptake, being degraded by liver cells and diffused through the vascular bed<sup>[1]</sup>.

Experiments on rat liver have shown that stimulation of the autonomic nerve plexus around the hepatic artery and portal vein causes increased production of glucose and lactate<sup>[1]</sup>, urate and allantoin formation<sup>[17]</sup>, decreased ketogenesis<sup>[18]</sup>, increased ureogenesis and ammonia uptake<sup>[19]</sup>, as well as increased oxygen utilization<sup>[20,21]</sup>. Also, hepatic nerve stimulation leads to decreased<sup>[16,17,20,22,23]</sup> and redistributed intrahepatic flow<sup>[21]</sup>, as well as raised noradrenaline levels in the hepatic vein<sup>[15-18]</sup>. All these effects of hepatic nerves are only possible in the presence of extracellular calcium<sup>[22,24]</sup>.

NPY, galanin, SP, CGRP, VIP and purine derivatives (ATP, adenosine) act as neurotransmitters, both in adrenergic and cholinergic nerve fibers, as well as in the related hepatic nerves. These neurotransmitters are released locally and are involved in regulating hepatic microcirculation. NPY and ATP act as vasoconstrictors, while VIP, CGRP, SP and adenosine produce vasodilation<sup>[14]</sup>.

Some neurotransmitters also have a metabolic function. Thus, sympathetic hepatic nerve stimulation causes the release of noradrenaline but also of galanin<sup>[25]</sup>, suggesting that galanin potentiates the action of norepinephrine to stimulate hepatic glucose production under stress<sup>[14]</sup>.

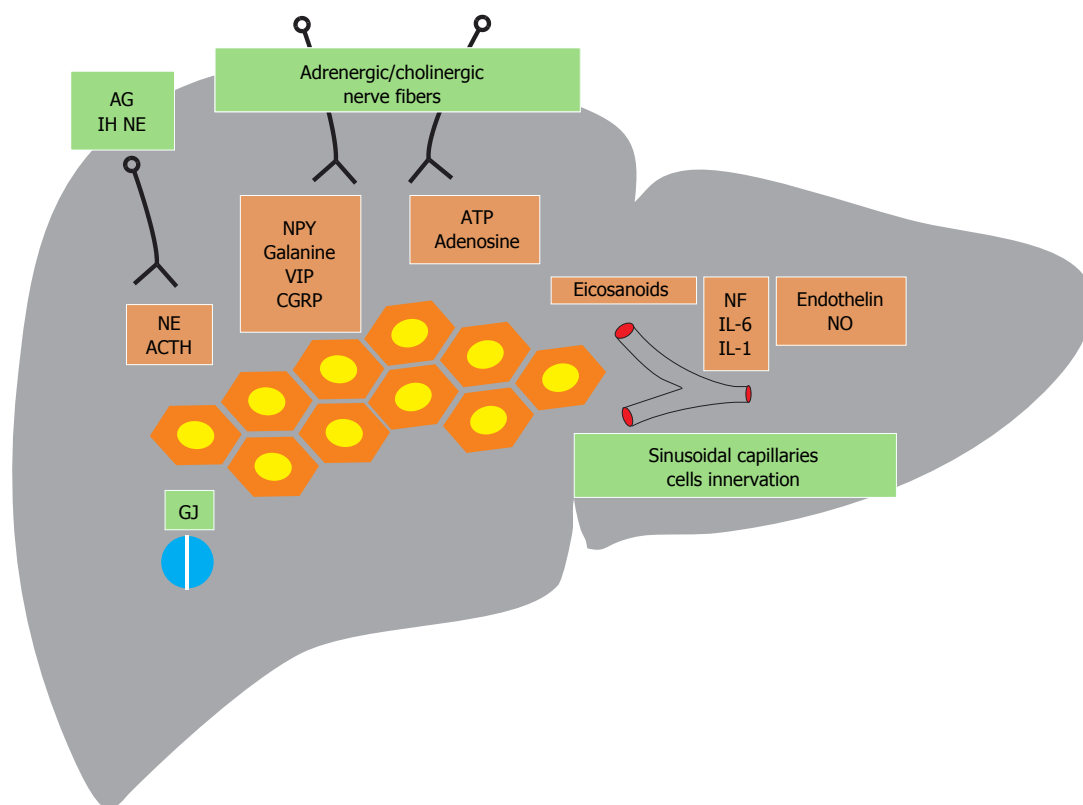
Yamamoto *et al.*<sup>[26]</sup> revealed the metabolic activity of ATP, which potentiates the action of hepatic sympathetic nerves suppression action on the formation of ketone bodies in the liver, the effect probably being due to ATP interaction with norepinephrine<sup>[14]</sup>.

## Intercellular transmission of signals through gap type junctions

Intrahepatic innervation varies by species. In some species, most hepatocytes are not directly innervated but there is an indirect mechanism for transmitting nervous inflow. One such mechanism is the intercellular communication carried out between adjacent hepatocytes *via* specific channels known as gap type junctions (GJ), which allow the passage of ions and small molecules<sup>[14]</sup>.

GJ density is different among species<sup>[27]</sup>. Thus, hepatic GJ are more numerous in rats and mice compared to rabbits and guinea pigs<sup>[14]</sup>.

GJ are membrane channels that allow intercellular communication between neighboring cells. GJ consists of two hemichannels, one hemichannel belonging to each



**Figure 1** Schematic representation of the communication pathways between nerve fibers and hepatocytes. AG: Adrenal gland; IH NE: Intrahepatic nerve endings; ATP: Adenosine triphosphate; NPY: Neuropeptide Y; VIP: Vasoactive intestinal peptide; CGRP: Calcitonin gene-related peptide; IL: Interleukin; NF: Necrotic factor; NO: Nitric oxide; GJ: Gap junction.

of the two adjacent cells. A hemichannel consists of six subunits or connexins. Connexin 32 (Cx32) is the major protein component expressed in murine hepatocytes. Cx32 plays an essential role in signal propagation induced by the norepinephrine released from sympathetic nerve endings in hepatocytes<sup>[28]</sup>.

GJ ensure the transmission of information to neighboring cells, achieving functional integration of hepatocytes, and thus functioning as a body and not as a mere cluster of cells<sup>[28]</sup>.

GJ have an important role in transmitting nervous impulses from sympathetic nerve endings in parenchymal and non-parenchymal cells of the liver, in some species of mammals. There is an inverse relationship between sympathetic nerve fiber density and number of intrahepatic GJ<sup>[14]</sup>. Research on rat liver, which contains numerous GJ<sup>[15,29]</sup>, showed that sympathetic nerves innervate only a part of parenchymal and non-parenchymal cells of the periportal area<sup>[15]</sup>. Metabolic and hemodynamic effects of hepatic sympathetic nerves are achieved by  $\alpha 1$  receptor stimulation<sup>[17,23,30]</sup>, are abolished by prostanoids synthesis inhibitors, and are mimicked by prostaglandins but not by thromboxanes<sup>[31]</sup>. Norepinephrine, as well as F2 $\alpha$  prostaglandin, stimulates the release of glucose from isolated hepatocytes with increased inositol 1,4,5-triphosphate and glycogen formation<sup>[32]</sup>.

Sending signals through GJ is involved in the metabolic effects of sympathetic nerves<sup>[14]</sup>. The norepinephrine released from sympathetic nerve endings binds to

$\alpha 1$  receptors of parenchymal and non-parenchymal cells. The release of glucose from the proximal parenchymal cells from the periportal region under the action of norepinephrine initiates a signal which propagates through GJ to distal parenchymal cells, which in turn releases glucose. Norepinephrine stimulates contraction of proximal non-parenchymal cells (sphincters), reducing the flow in the sinusoid capillaries. It also causes the release of prostaglandins (PG) into the Disse space. PG, in turn, bind to prostanoid receptors of parenchymal and non-parenchymal cells. PG released from non-parenchymal cells are rapidly degraded in the liver<sup>[32]</sup> and so do not reach the distal cells. PG increase glucose release in the periportal parenchymal cells and perhaps initiate a signal that propagates to the other cells by GJ. PG stimulate contraction of proximal non-parenchymal cells, thus reducing the flow to sinusoid capillaries<sup>[15,33]</sup>.

### Sinusoidal capillary cells innervation

Sinusoidal capillaries are located between the cell cords and have a 9 to 12 micrometers diameter. The sinusoidal capillary wall is discontinuous and is formed out of a basement membrane and a capillary endothelium. Sinusoidal endothelium consists of flattened endothelial cells and phagocytic Kupffer cells in a ratio of 5/3. In addition to these two main types of cells in the sinusoid capillaries, there are also stellate cells and lymphocytes<sup>[6]</sup>. Capillary walls have an important role in the regulation

of the sinusoidal microcirculation<sup>[34,35]</sup>.

Endothelial cells are flat and have elongated, hyperchromic nuclei and reduced cytoplasm. Junctional complexes are lacking. There are very small spaces of 0.5 micrometers between the cells. The apical membrane of the endothelial cells has transcytoplasmic fenestrations which are small holes arranged in nests with a diameter of 100 nm, with a role in controlling cholesterol, lipoprotein and vitamin A metabolism. In the cytoplasm of endothelial cells, a small number of cell organelles and pinocytosis vesicles were revealed. Endothelial cells produce prostaglandins, endothelin, IL-1 and IL-2<sup>[6,13]</sup>.

Hepatic stellate cells (Ito cells, lipocytes) are located in the Disse space in small niches, among hepatocytes. They are in contact with the liver cells and through their microvilli and cytoplasmic processes have contacts with endothelial cell microvilli<sup>[6]</sup>. Well developed organelles and lipid droplets were found in the HSC cytoplasm. HSCs store vitamin A, containing factors related to retinoid acid and retinol, and produce extracellular matrix. Under normal conditions, HSCs have a deposit function, while in pathological ones it transforms into myofibroblastic type cells<sup>[6,13,36,37]</sup>.

Research has shown that the distribution of intrahepatic innervation varies by species<sup>[29,38-43]</sup>. Guinea pig, cat and tupaia have an intralobular innervation similar to the human one<sup>[11,12,29,40]</sup>, in contrast to mice and rats where it differs from the human<sup>[39,41-43]</sup>.

In human liver, nerve endings are located in the Disse space<sup>[4,11,12]</sup>, closely connected to hepatocytes and non-parenchymal cells, particularly HSCs<sup>[7,8,10,11]</sup>.

Non-parenchymal cells are the only ones that can synthesize eicosanoids (prostaglandins, thromboxanes and leukotrienes) from arachidonic acid released from phospholipids by the action of phospholipase A<sub>2</sub> and converted to prostaglandins and thromboxanes *via* the cyclooxygenase path and leukotrienes *via* the lipoxygenase path<sup>[1]</sup>. Experiments on perfused rat liver have shown that the synthesis and secretion of prostanoids in non-parenchymal liver cells is influenced by a number of physiological stimuli, pathological and chemical. These stimuli also determine an increased release of glucose and lactate, as well as increased vascular resistance in the liver<sup>[1]</sup>. Of these stimuli, the most important are: extracellular nucleotides<sup>[44]</sup>, nucleosides<sup>[45]</sup>, zymosan<sup>[46,47]</sup>, endotoxins<sup>[48]</sup>, aggregates of immunoglobulins<sup>[49]</sup>, anaphylatoxins<sup>[50,51]</sup>, phorbol esters and calcium ionophores<sup>[44]</sup>. Norepinephrine and/or other chemical mediators released from nerve endings can stimulate the formation of prostanoids in non-parenchymal liver cells. Prostanoids, in turn, can modulate hepatocyte metabolism<sup>[1]</sup>.

Of eicosanoids, only PG, without thromboxanes and leukotrienes, play a role in the events triggered by nerve stimulation<sup>[1]</sup>.

PG participation in the chain of events initiated by nerve stimuli in the liver depends on hepatocellular receptors for PG. Research conducted so far confirms the existence of these receptors<sup>[1]</sup>.

HSCs are indirectly involved in nerve fiber communication with hepatocytes, through PG. Noradrenaline may lead, by means of  $\alpha$ 1-adrenergic receptors, to increased synthesis of PG in the HSC, and PG, in turn, stimulate glycogenolysis in the hepatocytes. Unlike KC, producing predominantly PGD<sub>2</sub>, HSC secrete PGF<sub>2</sub>  $\alpha$  released in increased amounts compared with PGD<sub>2</sub>, as a result of sympathetic stimulation<sup>[52]</sup>.

Intrahepatic nerve fiber terminations, often containing vesicles which contain neurotransmitters like substance P (SP) and vasoactive intestinal peptide (VIP), are closely related to HSC. It is considered that HSC that surround CECS, forming sinusoidal capillary walls, have a role in the contraction and relaxation of sinusoidal walls, thus intervening in the regulation of the sinusoidal microcirculation<sup>[4]</sup>.

HSC contraction is stimulated by a number of substances such as endothelin-1 (ET-1), angiotensin II, norepinephrine, prostaglandin F<sub>2</sub>, thromboxane A<sub>2</sub> and thrombin. In contrast, vasoactive substances such as acetylcholine, VIP, nitric oxide (NO), carbon monoxide, prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub> and adrenomedullin produce HSC relaxation<sup>[4]</sup>.

ET-1 produces contraction of HSCs through ET receptor stimulation on autocrine or paracrine pathways. HSC contraction appears to be related to the increase of intracellular Ca<sup>2+</sup> and inositol phosphate. For the sinusoid microcirculation control role of the HSC, the presence in the HSC cytoplasm of  $\alpha$  smooth muscle actin, which is a contractile protein, also stands, such that the contraction of the HSC can be compared with that of smooth muscle cells in the vessel wall structure. On the other hand, prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub>, adrenomedullin and other vasoactive substances determine HSC relaxation by increasing intracellular cAMP. In addition, HSC produces NO and inhibits contractility by an autocrine mechanism linked to NO<sup>[8]</sup>.

Of the mentioned vasoactive substances, ET-1 and NO have an important role in the regulation of sinusoidal microcirculation. ET is a peptide consisting of 21 amino acids with a strong vasoconstrictive effect on the smooth muscle fibers. It has three isoforms, ET-1, ET-2 and ET-3<sup>[4,53]</sup>.

Two receptors have been identified for ET: ET<sub>A</sub> and ET<sub>B</sub>, both belonging to the superfamily of G-protein-coupled receptors<sup>[54]</sup>. ET<sub>A</sub> receptor has a higher affinity for ET-1 and ET-2 than for ET-3, while the ET<sub>B</sub> receptor has a similar affinity for all three isoforms of ET. ET<sub>A</sub> receptors stimulation increases intracellular cAMP levels, whereas ET<sub>B</sub> receptor stimulation leads to inhibition of the adenylate cyclase system<sup>[55]</sup>. Also, ET<sub>B</sub> receptor stimulation activates Ca<sup>2+</sup>-dependent NOS<sup>[56]</sup>. Douglas *et al*<sup>[57]</sup> described two ET<sub>B</sub> receptor subtypes: ET<sub>B1</sub> and ET<sub>B2</sub>. Stimulation of ET<sub>A</sub> and ET<sub>B1</sub> receptors causes contraction of smooth muscle fibers, while ET<sub>B2</sub> receptor stimulation causes dilation by increased synthesis of NO<sup>[58]</sup>.

ET-1 receptors from intralobular spaces predominate in the juxtaportal region. About 35% of ET-1 receptors

are located in the HSCs, a smaller number are located in the CECS and KCs<sup>[59]</sup>. Both ET<sub>A</sub> and ET<sub>B</sub> receptors are found in the liver. All cells of the sinusoidal capillary walls have ET<sub>B</sub> receptors but only HSCs have ET<sub>A</sub> receptors. Mallat *et al.*<sup>[60]</sup> have identified 20% ET<sub>A</sub> receptors and 80% ET<sub>B</sub> receptors on activated HSCs.

NO is synthesized from L-arginine by the NO synthetase path (NOS). Three NOS isoforms have been identified: two are calcium-dependent, one produced by the neurons (nNOS or NOS I) and other by the vascular endothelial cells (eNOS or NOS III), and one calcium-independent isoform, cytokine-induced (iNOS or NOS II). Rat HSCs shrink under ET-1 or SP action and relax, causing vasodilatation, under NO action produced by HSC under the influence of IL-1<sup>[4,61]</sup>.

In normal liver, sinusoidal contraction is inhibited by ET<sub>A</sub> receptor antagonists<sup>[62,63]</sup> but, according to some authors, not by ET<sub>B</sub> receptors antagonists<sup>[4,62-64]</sup>. Other researchers believe, however, that ET<sub>B</sub> receptor stimulation results in constriction of sinusoid capillaries<sup>[65]</sup>. It is possible that this discrepancy between the results obtained by different authors is due to coupling ET<sub>B</sub> receptors with NOS, which masks the vasoconstrictor effect<sup>[63,66]</sup>.

The various subtypes of endothelin have different effects on hepatic microcirculation. The relationship between NO and endothelin is extremely important in the control of vascular tone<sup>[63]</sup>.

Liu *et al.*<sup>[58]</sup> have shown that ET-1 binding to ET<sub>B</sub> receptor leads to eNOS activation on the Akt phosphorylation path, thus reducing the phosphorylation of eNOS and NO synthesis. The same researchers highlighted the crucial role of  $\beta\gamma$  subunits of the G protein in triggering endothelin/NO reactions. The stimuli which regulate the ET expression and vascular sensitivity to ET also adjust the NOS and heme oxygenase-1 activity. Both enzymes catalyze the production of substances which, by guanylate cyclase activation, produce vasodilation<sup>[67]</sup>.

## CONCLUSION

Liver innervation is one of the most complex control systems in the human body; therefore, a better understanding of its inner workings is of paramount importance for developing future therapies and procedures for ameliorating the metabolic function of the liver. Being able to manipulate nerve impulses and synaptic mediators can possibly allow direct control over the functions of hepatocytes. Direct acting agents with excellent control over specific liver functions could become a reality, with direct implications for drug therapy, surgery or liver transplant.

## REFERENCES

- Gardemann A, Püschel GP, Jungermann K. Nervous control of liver metabolism and hemodynamics. *Eur J Biochem* 1992; **207**: 399-411 [PMID: 1633798 DOI: 10.1007/978-3-642-78046-2\_12]
- Shimazu T, Usami M. Further studies on the mechanism of phosphorylase activation in rabbit liver in response to splanchnic nerve stimulation. *J Physiol* 1982; **329**: 231-242 [PMID: 6128410 DOI: 10.1083/jcb.74.1.299]
- Reilly FD, McCuskey PA, McCuskey RS. Intrahepatic distribution of nerves in the rat. *Anat Rec* 1978; **191**: 55-67 [PMID: 646138 DOI: 10.1002/ar.1091910106]
- Ueno T, Bioulac-Sage P, Balabaud C, Rosenbaum J. Innervation of the sinusoidal wall: regulation of the sinusoidal diameter. *Anat Rec A Discov Mol Cell Evol Biol* 2004; **280**: 868-873 [PMID: 15382014 DOI: 10.1002/ar.a.20092]
- Kmiec Z. Cooperation of liver cells in health and disease. *Adv Anat Embryol Cell Biol* 2001; **161**: III-XIII, 1-151 [PMID: 11729749]
- Crişan M, Mureşan V. Anatomia microscopică a ficatului. In: *Tratat de Hepatologie*. Grigorescu M, editor. Bucuresti: Naţională M, 2004: 24-34
- Ueno T, Inuzuka S, Torimura T, Sakata R, Sakamoto M, Gondo K, Aoki T, Tanikawa K, Tsutsumi V. Distribution of substance P and vasoactive intestinal peptide in the human liver: light and electron immunoperoxidase methods of observation. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1991; **86**: 1633-1637 [PMID: 1719804]
- Ueno T, Tanikawa K. Intralobular innervation and lipocyte contractility in the liver. *Nutrition* 1997; **13**: 141-148 [PMID: 9106792 DOI: 10.1016/S0899-9007(96)00389-9]
- Ito T, Shibasaki S. Electron microscopic study on the hepatic sinusoidal wall and the fat-storing cells in the normal human liver. *Arch Histol Jpn* 1968; **29**: 137-192 [PMID: 5691853 DOI: 10.1679/aohc1950.29.137]
- Bioulac-Sage P, Lafon ME, Saric J, Balabaud C. Nerves and perisinusoidal cells in human liver. *J Hepatol* 1990; **10**: 105-112 [PMID: 2407769]
- Akiyoshi H, Gonda T, Terada T. A comparative histochemical and immunohistochemical study of aminergic, cholinergic and peptidergic innervation in rat, hamster, guinea pig, dog and human livers. *Liver* 1998; **18**: 352-359 [PMID: 9831365 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0676.1998.tb00817.x]
- Peinado MA, del Moral ML, Jiménez A, Rodrigo J, Esteban FJ. The nitrergic autonomic innervation of the liver. *Auton Neurosci* 2002; **99**: 67-69 [PMID: 12241089 DOI: 10.1016/S1566-0702(02)00135-2]
- Zheng ZY, Weng SY, Yu Y. Signal molecule-mediated hepatic cell communication during liver regeneration. *World J Gastroenterol* 2009; **15**: 5776-5783 [PMID: 19998497 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.15.5776]
- Shimazu T. Progress and perspective of neuro-hepatology. In: *Liver innervation and neural control of hepatic function*. Shimazu T, editor. Eastleigh: John Libbey & Company Ltd, 1996: 3-13
- Seseke FG, Gardemann A, Jungermann K. Signal propagation via gap junctions, a key step in the regulation of liver metabolism by the sympathetic hepatic nerves. *FEBS Lett* 1992; **301**: 265-270 [PMID: 1577164 DOI: 10.1016/0014-5793(92)80254-E]
- Gardemann A, Strulik H, Jungermann K. Different accessibility from the artery and the portal vein of alpha- and beta-receptors involved in the sympathetic nerve action on glycogenolysis and hemodynamics in perfused rat liver. *Biol Chem Hoppe Seyler* 1989; **370**: 47-54 [PMID: 2540765]
- Ulken V, Püschel GP, Jungermann K. Increase in glucose and lactate output and perfusion resistance by stimulation of hepatic nerves in isolated perfused rat liver: role of alpha 1-, alpha 2-, beta 1- and beta 2-receptors. *Biol Chem Hoppe Seyler* 1991; **372**: 401-409 [PMID: 1654928 DOI: 10.1515/bchm3.1991.372.1.401]
- Beuers U, Beckh K, Jungermann K. Control of ketogenesis in the perfused rat liver by the sympathetic innervation. *Eur J Biochem* 1986; **158**: 19-24 [PMID: 3732268 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-1033.1986.tb09715.x]
- Ballé C, Jungermann K. Control of urea production, glutamine release and ammonia uptake in the perfused rat liver by the sympathetic innervation. *Eur J Biochem* 1986; **158**: 13-18 [PMID: 3732264]

- 20 **Beckh K**, Hartmann H, Jungermann K, Scholz R. Regulation of oxygen consumption in perfused rat liver: decrease by alpha-sympathetic nerve stimulation and increase by the alpha-agonist phenylephrine. *Pflugers Arch* 1984; **401**: 104-106 [PMID: 6473064 DOI: 10.1007/BF00581541]
- 21 **Ji S**, Beckh K, Jungermann K. Regulation of oxygen consumption and microcirculation by alpha-sympathetic nerves in isolated perfused rat liver. *FEBS Lett* 1984; **167**: 117-122 [PMID: 6698200]
- 22 **Hartmann H**, Beckh K, Jungermann K. Direct control of glycogen metabolism in the perfused rat liver by the sympathetic innervation. *Eur J Biochem* 1982; **123**: 521-526 [PMID: 6281012 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-1033.1982.tb06562.x]
- 23 **Gardemann A**, Strulik H, Jungermann K. Nervous control of glycogenolysis and blood flow in arterially and portally perfused liver. *Am J Physiol* 1987; **253**: E238-E245 [PMID: 3631254]
- 24 **Athari A**, Jungermann K. Role of extracellular calcium in the metabolic and hemodynamic actions of sympathetic nerve stimulation, noradrenaline and prostaglandin F<sub>2</sub> alpha in perfused rat liver. Differential inhibition by nifedipine and verapamil. *Biochem Int* 1990; **20**: 13-23 [PMID: 2328018]
- 25 **Kowalyk S**, Veith R, Boyle M, Taborsky GJ. Liver releases galanin during sympathetic nerve stimulation. *Am J Physiol* 1992; **262**: E671-E678 [PMID: 1375437]
- 26 **Yamamoto T**, Iwai M, Kimura S, Shimazu T. The mechanism of action of hepatic sympathetic nerves on ketone-body output from perfused rat liver. The effect of the interaction of noradrenaline with ATP on the release of beta-hydroxybutyrate. *Eur J Biochem* 1995; **234**: 466-471 [PMID: 8536690 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-1033.1995.466\_b.x]
- 27 **Shimazu T**, Iwai M. The hypothalamus, sympathetic nerves and regulation of peripheral glucose metabolism. In: New functional aspects of the suprachiasmatic nucleus of the hypothalamus. Nakagawa H, Oomura Y, Nagai K, editors. London: John Libbey; 93-103
- 28 **Nelles E**, Bützler C, Jung D, Temme A, Gabriel HD, Dahl U, Traub O, Stümpel F, Jungermann K, Zielasek J, Toyka KV, Dermietzel R, Willecke K. Defective propagation of signals generated by sympathetic nerve stimulation in the liver of connexin32-deficient mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 9565-9570 [PMID: 8790370 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.93.18.9565]
- 29 **Forssmann WG**, Ito S. Hepatocyte innervation in primates. *J Cell Biol* 1977; **74**: 299-313 [PMID: 406265]
- 30 **Jungermann K**. [Regulation of liver functions by autonomic hepatic nerves]. *Naturwissenschaften* 1989; **76**: 547-559 [PMID: 2695845 DOI: 10.1007/BF00462861]
- 31 **Iwai M**, Jungermann K. Possible involvement of eicosanoids in the actions of sympathetic hepatic nerves on carbohydrate metabolism and hemodynamics in perfused rat liver. *FEBS Lett* 1987; **221**: 155-160 [PMID: 3113998 DOI: 10.1016/0014-5793(87)80371-X]
- 32 **Athari A**, Jungermann K. Direct activation by prostaglandin F<sub>2</sub> alpha but not thromboxane A<sub>2</sub> of glycogenolysis via an increase in inositol 1,4,5-trisphosphate in rat hepatocytes. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1989; **163**: 1235-1242 [PMID: 2551282 DOI: 10.1016/0006-291X(89)91110-8]
- 33 **Jungermann K**, Katz N. Functional specialization of different hepatocyte populations. *Physiol Rev* 1989; **69**: 708-764 [PMID: 2664826]
- 34 **Ueno T**, Sata M, Sakata R, Torimura T, Sakamoto M, Sugawara H, Tanikawa K. Hepatic stellate cells and intralobular innervation in human liver cirrhosis. *Hum Pathol* 1997; **28**: 953-959 [PMID: 9269832 DOI: 10.1016/S0046-8177(97)90011-3]
- 35 **Geerts A**. History, heterogeneity, developmental biology, and functions of quiescent hepatic stellate cells. *Semin Liver Dis* 2001; **21**: 311-335 [PMID: 11586463 DOI: 10.1055/s-2001-17550]
- 36 **Eng FJ**, Friedman SL. Fibrogenesis I. New insights into hepatic stellate cell activation: the simple becomes complex. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2000; **279**: G7-G11 [PMID: 10898741]
- 37 **MacSween RNM**, Scothorne RJ. Developmental anatomy and normal structure. In: MacSween RNM, Burt AD, Portmann BC, Ishak KG, Scheurer PJ, Anthony PP. Pathology of the liver. 4th ed. London: Churchill Livingstone, 2001: 1-66
- 38 **Barja F**, Mathison R. Adrenergic and peptidergic (substance P and vasoactive intestinal polypeptide) innervation of the rat portal vein. *Blood Vessels* 1982; **19**: 263-272 [PMID: 6180787]
- 39 **Barja F**, Mathison R. Sensory innervation of the rat portal vein and the hepatic artery. *J Auton Nerv Syst* 1984; **10**: 117-125 [PMID: 6205041 DOI: 10.1016/0165-1838(84)90050-X]
- 40 **Ohata M**. Electron microscope study on the innervation of guinea pig liver--proposal of sensory nerve terminals in the hepatic parenchyme. *Arch Histol Jpn* 1984; **47**: 149-178 [PMID: 6477058 DOI: 10.1679/aohc.47.149]
- 41 **Sasaki Y**, Kamada T, Hayashi N, Sato N, Kasahara A, Fusamoto H, Shiosaka S, Tohyama M, Shiotani Y. Immunohistochemical distribution of glucagon, substance P and vasoactive intestinal polypeptide in hepatic vasculature of the rat. *Hepatology* 1984; **4**: 1184-1189 [PMID: 6209200 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840040614]
- 42 **Ito Y**, Magari S, Sakanaka M. Immunoelectron-microscopic localization of peptidergic nerve fibers around lymphatic capillaries in the rat liver. *Arch Histol Cytol* 1990; **53** Suppl: 199-208 [PMID: 1701312 DOI: 10.1679/aohc.53.Suppl.199]
- 43 **Fehér E**, Fodor M, Fehér J. Ultrastructural localization of somatostatin- and substance P-immunoreactive nerve fibers in the feline liver. *Gastroenterology* 1992; **102**: 287-294 [PMID: 1370158]
- 44 **Tran-Thi TA**, Häussinger D, Gyufko K, Decker K. Stimulation of prostaglandin release by Ca<sup>2+</sup>-mobilizing agents from the perfused rat liver. A comparative study on the action of ATP, UTP, phenylephrine, vasopressin and nerve stimulation. *Biol Chem Hoppe Seyler* 1988; **369**: 65-68 [PMID: 3162366 DOI: 10.1515/bchm3.1988.369.1.65]
- 45 **vom Dahl S**, Wettstein M, Gerok W, Häussinger D. Stimulation of release of prostaglandin D<sub>2</sub> and thromboxane B<sub>2</sub> from perfused rat liver by extracellular adenosine. *Biochem J* 1990; **270**: 39-44 [PMID: 2396991]
- 46 **Dieter P**, Altin JG, Decker K, Bygrave FL. Possible involvement of eicosanoids in the zymosan and arachidonic-acid-induced oxygen uptake, glycogenolysis and Ca<sup>2+</sup> mobilization in the perfused rat liver. *Eur J Biochem* 1987; **165**: 455-460 [PMID: 3109902 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-1033.1987.tb11460.x]
- 47 **Dieter P**, Altin JG, Bygrave FL. Possible involvement of prostaglandins in vasoconstriction induced by zymosan and arachidonic acid in the perfused rat liver. *FEBS Lett* 1987; **213**: 174-178 [PMID: 3104084 DOI: 10.1016/0014-5793(87)81486-2]
- 48 **Castelleijn E**, Kuiper J, Van Rooij HC, Kamps JA, Koster JF, Van Berkel TJ. Endotoxin stimulates glycogenolysis in the liver by means of intercellular communication. *J Biol Chem* 1988; **263**: 6953-6955 [PMID: 3284878]
- 49 **Buxton DB**, Fisher RA, Briseno DL, Hanahan DJ, Olson MS. Glycogenolytic and haemodynamic responses to heat-aggregated immunoglobulin G and prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub> in the perfused rat liver. *Biochem J* 1987; **243**: 493-498 [PMID: 2820382]
- 50 **Püschel GP**, Oppermann M, Muschol W, Götze O, Jungermann K. Increase of glucose and lactate output and decrease of flow by human anaphylatoxin C<sub>3a</sub> but not C<sub>5a</sub> in perfused rat liver. *FEBS Lett* 1989; **243**: 83-87 [PMID: 2784112 DOI: 10.1016/0014-5793(89)81222-0]
- 51 **Muschol W**, Püschel GP, Hülsmann M, Jungermann K. Eicosanoid-mediated increase in glucose and lactate output as well as decrease and redistribution of flow by complement-activated rat serum in perfused rat liver. *Eur J Biochem* 1991; **196**: 525-530 [PMID: 2007411 DOI: 10.1111/j.1432-1033.1991.tb15845.x]
- 52 **Püschel GP**, Neuschäfer-Rube F, de Vries C, Hanecke K,

- Nolte A, Kirchner C, Schroder A, Schestag F, Athari A, Jungermann K. Characterization and molecular cloning of rat hepatocyte prostaglandin receptors possibly involved in the nerve stimulation-dependent increase in hepatic glucose output. In: Liver Innervation. Shimazu T, editor. Eastleigh: John Libbey & Company Ltd, 1996: 87-94
- 53 **Yanagisawa M**, Kurihara H, Kimura S, Tomobe Y, Kobayashi M, Mitsui Y, Yazaki Y, Goto K, Masaki T. A novel potent vasoconstrictor peptide produced by vascular endothelial cells. *Nature* 1988; **332**: 411-415 [PMID: 2451132 DOI: 10.1038/332411a0]
  - 54 **Huggins JP**, Pelton JT, Miller RC. The structure and specificity of endothelin receptors: their importance in physiology and medicine. *Pharmacol Ther* 1993; **59**: 55-123 [PMID: 8259382 DOI: 10.1016/0163-7258(93)90041-B]
  - 55 **Eguchi S**, Hirata Y, Imai T, Marumo F. Endothelin receptor subtypes are coupled to adenylate cyclase via different guanyl nucleotide-binding proteins in vasculature. *Endocrinology* 1993; **132**: 524-529 [PMID: 7678793 DOI: 10.1210/en.132.2.524]
  - 56 **Tsukahara H**, Ende H, Magazine HI, Bahou WF, Goligorsky MS. Molecular and functional characterization of the non-isopeptide-selective ETB receptor in endothelial cells. Receptor coupling to nitric oxide synthase. *J Biol Chem* 1994; **269**: 21778-21785 [PMID: 7520443]
  - 57 **Douglas SA**, Meek TD, Ohlstein EH. Novel receptor antagonists welcome a new era in endothelin biology. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 1994; **15**: 313-316 [PMID: 7992380 DOI: 10.1016/0165-6147(94)90019-1]
  - 58 **Liu S**, Premont RT, Kontos CD, Huang J, Rockey DC. Endothelin-1 activates endothelial cell nitric-oxide synthase via heterotrimeric G-protein betagamma subunit signaling to protein kinase B/Akt. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 49929-49935 [PMID: 14523027 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M306930200]
  - 59 **Gondo K**, Ueno T, Sakamoto M, Sakisaka S, Sata M, Tanikawa K. The endothelin-1 binding site in rat liver tissue: light- and electron-microscopic autoradiographic studies. *Gastroenterology* 1993; **104**: 1745-1749 [PMID: 8500734]
  - 60 **Mallat A**, Fouassier L, Préaux AM, Mavrier P, Lotersztajn S. Antiproliferative effects of ET-1 in human liver Ito cells: an ETB- and a cyclic AMP-mediated pathway. *J Cardiovasc Pharmacol* 1995; **26** Suppl 3: S132-S134 [PMID: 8587342]
  - 61 **Sakamoto M**, Ueno T, Nakamura T, Hashimoto O, Sakata R, Kin M, Ogata R, Kawaguchi T, Torimura T, Sata M. Estrogen upregulates nitric oxide synthase expression in cultured rat hepatic sinusoidal endothelial cells. *J Hepatol* 2001; **34**: 858-864 [PMID: 11451169 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(01)00023-X]
  - 62 **Zhang JX**, Bauer M, Clemens MG. Vessel- and target cell-specific actions of endothelin-1 and endothelin-3 in rat liver. *Am J Physiol* 1995; **269**: G269-G277 [PMID: 7653568]
  - 63 **Clemens MG**, Zhang JX. Regulation of sinusoidal perfusion: in vivo methodology and control by endothelins. *Semin Liver Dis* 1999; **19**: 383-396 [PMID: 10643624 DOI: 10.1055/s-2007-1007127]
  - 64 **Wang HG**, Shibamoto T, Miyahara T. Endothelin-1 selectively contracts portal vein through both ETA and ETB receptors in isolated rabbit liver. *Am J Physiol* 1997; **273**: G1036-G1043 [PMID: 9374700]
  - 65 **Ito Y**, Katori M, Majima M, Kakita A. Constriction of mouse hepatic venules and sinusoids by endothelins through ETB receptor subtype. *Int J Microcirc Clin Exp* 1996; **16**: 250-258 [PMID: 8951523 DOI: 10.1159/000179181]
  - 66 **Bauer M**, Bauer I, Sonin NV, Kresge N, Baveja R, Yokoyama Y, Harding D, Zhang JX, Clemens MG. Functional significance of endothelin B receptors in mediating sinusoidal and extrasinusoidal effects of endothelins in the intact rat liver. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 937-947 [PMID: 10733551 DOI: 10.1053/he.2000.5922]
  - 67 **Suematsu M**, Wakabayashi Y, Ishimura Y. Gaseous monoxides: a new class of microvascular regulator in the liver. *Cardiovasc Res* 1996; **32**: 679-686 [PMID: 8915186]

**P- Reviewers:** Boin IFSF, Kitamura T, Serra PA **S- Editor:** Gou SX  
**L- Editor:** Roemmele A **E- Editor:** Zhang DN



## Hepatoprotective effect of silymarin

Nancy Vargas-Mendoza, Eduardo Madrigal-Santillán, Ángel Morales-González, Jaime Esquivel-Soto, Cesar Esquivel-Chirino, Manuel García-Luna y González-Rubio, Juan A Gayosso-de-Lucio, José A Morales-González

Nancy Vargas-Mendoza, Juan A Gayosso-de-Lucio, Institute of Health Sciences, Autonomous University of Hidalgo State, Pachuca 42000, México

Eduardo Madrigal-Santillán, José A Morales-González, Laboratorio Medicina de Conservación, Escuela Superior de Medicina, Instituto Politécnico Nacional, México City 11340, México

Ángel Morales-González, Escuela Superior de Computo, Instituto Politécnico Nacional, Av. Juan de Dios Bátiz s/n esquina Miguel Othón de Mendizabal, Unidad Profesional Adolfo López Mateos, México City 07738, México

Jaime Esquivel-Soto, Cesar Esquivel-Chirino, Manuel García-Luna y González-Rubio, Faculty of Dentistry, UNAM, México City 07738, México

**Author contributions:** All of the authors participated equally in the creation of this document.

Supported by Proyecto SIP 20140856, ESM-IPN

Correspondence to: José A Morales-González, MD, PhD, Laboratorio Medicina de Conservación, Escuela Superior de Medicina, Instituto Politécnico Nacional, Plan de San Luis y Díaz Mirón, Col. Casco de Santo Tomás, Del. Miguel Hidalgo, México City 11340, México. [jmorales101@yahoo.com.mx](mailto:jmorales101@yahoo.com.mx)

Telephone: +1-55-57296300-62753 Fax: +1-55-53963503

Received: November 3, 2013

Revised: January 27, 2014

Accepted: February 20, 2014

Published online: March 27, 2014

### Abstract

The use of medicinal plants in treating illnesses has been reported since ancestral times. In the case of hepatic diseases, several species such as *Silybum marianum*, *Phyllanthus niruri*, and *Panus giganteus* (Berk.) have been shown to ameliorate hepatic lesions. Silymarin is a natural compound derived from the species *Silybum marianum*, which is commonly known as Milk thistle. This plant contains at least seven flavoligands and the flavonoid taxifolin. The hepatoprotective and antioxidant activity of silymarin is caused by its ability to inhibit the free radicals that are produced from the metabolism of toxic substances such as ethanol, acetaminophen, and carbon tetrachloride. The genera-

tion of free radicals is known to damage cellular membranes and cause lipoperoxidation. Silymarin enhances hepatic glutathione and may contribute to the antioxidant defense of the liver. It has also been shown that silymarin increases protein synthesis in hepatocytes by stimulating RNA polymerase I activity. A previous study on humans reported that silymarin treatment caused a slight increase in the survival of patients with cirrhotic alcoholism compared with untreated controls.

© 2014 Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. All rights reserved.

**Key words:** *Silybum marianum*; Hepatoprotector; Lipoperoxidation; Silymarin

**Core tip:** One of the mechanisms of liver damage caused by alcohol is the generation of free radicals formed by the metabolism of this xenobiotic. Silymarin is an antioxidant that protects the liver from the free radical damage produced by alcohol metabolism. Silymarin is the most used natural compound for the treatment of hepatic diseases worldwide due to its antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and anti-fibrotic activities. Silymarin functions by stabilizing biological membranes and increasing protein synthesis.

Vargas-Mendoza N, Madrigal-Santillán E, Morales-González Á, Esquivel-Soto J, Esquivel-Chirino C, García-Luna y González-Rubio M, Gayosso-de-Lucio JA, Morales-González JA. Hepatoprotective effect of silymarin. *World J Hepatol* 2014; 6(3): 144-149 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v6/i3/144.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v6.i3.144>

### INTRODUCTION

The liver is an important organ that has a key role in the

maintenance of homeostasis. The liver is responsible for multiple metabolic functions and physiological processes such as bile production, energy generation, vitamin storage, and the metabolism of carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids. After intestinal absorption is complete the blood is rich in nutrients and xenobiotics. The blood is then transported to the liver *via* the portal vein, which carries multiple toxic substances including ethanol (Et-OH), drugs, pharmaceuticals, and toxins to the liver. As a result, the liver is susceptible to toxicity and damage. Many people have been afflicted with some type of liver lesion. Examples of liver lesions include fatty liver, non-alcoholic steatosis, hepatitis A, B, or C, cirrhosis, and hepatocellular carcinoma (the third leading cause of cancer-related mortality worldwide)<sup>[1]</sup>. Hepatic diseases are primary causes of morbidity and mortality worldwide. The most recent surveillance report published by the National Institute on Alcohol Abuse and Alcoholism showed that liver cirrhosis was the 12<sup>th</sup> leading cause of death in the United States<sup>[2]</sup>. Liver disease is exacerbated by unhealthy lifestyles, obesity, and the excessive consumption of alcohol and drugs<sup>[3]</sup>.

The use of medicinal plants has been reported since ancestral times. In the case of hepatic diseases, several species such as *Silybum marianum*<sup>[4]</sup>, *Phyllanthus niruri*<sup>[5]</sup>, and *Panus giganteus* (Berk.) have been shown to ameliorate hepatic lesions<sup>[6]</sup>.

## SILYMARIN

### Overview

Flavonoids are polyphenol compounds that are also considered essential nutrients. Their basic chemical structure consists of two benzene rings bound by a three-atom heterocyclic carbon chain. The oxidation of the structure generates several families of flavonoids (flavones, flavonols, flavanones, anthocyanins, flavanols, and isoflavones). Chemical modifications of each family can lead to > 5000 individual compounds with different properties<sup>[7]</sup>.

*Silybum marianum* is the scientific name for Milk thistle or St. Mary's thistle. It is a plant native to the Mediterranean region and belongs to the Asteraceae family. It is characterized by thorny branches and a milky sap, with its oval leaves reaching up to 30 cm. The flowers are bright pink and can measure up to 8 cm in diameter<sup>[8]</sup>. Milk thistle grows in its wild form in southern Europe, northern Africa, and the Middle East. The plant is cultivated in Hungary, China, and South American countries such as Argentina, Venezuela, and Ecuador. In Mexico, Milk thistle is consumed as a supplementary food<sup>[9]</sup>.

Silymarin is a natural compound that is present in species derived from *Silybum marianum*, which is commonly known as Milk thistle. The plant contains at least seven flavolignans and the flavonoid taxifolin. The most important flavolignans present include silybin, silydianin, and silychristine. Silybin represents between 50% and 70% of the extract from silymarin. The following flavolignan iso-

forms are known (Figure 1): silybin A, silybin B, isosilybin A, and isosilybin B<sup>[10]</sup>. Silymarin has been used worldwide for many years as a complementary alternative medicine because of the beneficial effects associated with the treatment of hepatic diseases. Silymarin belongs to the Aster family (Asteraceae or Compositae). The mature plant has large brilliant-purple flowers and abundant thorns. The plant grows in places with sufficient sun exposure<sup>[11]</sup>.

The low level of bioavailable flavolignans is known. For example, the level of silymarin absorption is between 20% and 50%. Silybin is the major compound of silymarin and limiting factors such as low solubility in water, low bioavailability, and poor intestinal absorption reduce its efficacy. New soluble silybin-derived biocompounds (silybin bis-hemisuccinate,  $\beta$ -cyclodextrin complex, silybin-*N*-methyl-glucamine, silybin 11-*O*-phosphate, and silybin-phosphatidylcholine) have thus been designed<sup>[10]</sup>. Chronic inflammation occurs in patients with hepatic damage. Thus, for patients with compensatory cirrhosis, hepatitis C, and non-alcoholic hepatic steatosis, the bioavailability of compounds present in silymarin may be affected, which may also explain the low effectiveness of treatment with flavonoids in these patients<sup>[12,13]</sup>.

Sy-Cordero *et al*<sup>[14]</sup> isolated four key flavolignans and diastereoisomers (silybin A, silybin B, isosilybin A, and isosilybin B) from *S. marianum* on a gram-scale. These compounds and two other related analogues are present in extremely minute quantities. The compounds were evaluated for their antiproliferative/cytotoxic activity against human prostate cancer cell lines. Silymarin reduces the incidence of certain cancers<sup>[15]</sup>. Su *et al*<sup>[16]</sup> used silymarin on nasopharyngeal carcinoma cells (NPC-TW01) and found an increase in Bcl-2 expression and a decrease in the activated caspase-3 or apoptosis-inducing factor (AIF) with low-dose (80  $\mu$ mol/L) treatment.

The molecular targets of silymarin for cancer prevention have been studied. Milk thistle interferes with the expression of the cell cycle regulators and proteins involved in apoptosis. Thus, it can modulate the balance between cell survival and apoptosis. Lee *et al*<sup>[17]</sup> reported that silybin inhibited the kinase activity of mitogen-activated protein kinase (MEK)-1/2 and ribosomal S6 kinase (RSK)-2 in melanoma cells. The treatment of melanoma cells with silybin attenuated the phosphorylation of extracellular signal-regulated kinase (ERK)-1/2 and RSK2, which is regulated by the upstream kinases MEK1/2. The blockade of MEK1/2-ERK1/2-RSK2 signaling by silybin resulted in the reduced activation of nuclear factor-kappa B (NF- $\kappa$ B), activator protein-1, and STAT3. These proteins are transcriptional regulators of several proliferative genes in melanomas. Silybin blocks the activation of these transcription factors and induces cell-cycle arrest at the G<sub>1</sub> phase, which inhibits melanoma cell growth *in vitro* and *in vivo*. Silymarin suppresses ultraviolet radiation A-induced oxidative stress (OS), which can induce skin damage. Thus, the topical application of silymarin can be a useful strategy for protecting against skin cancer<sup>[18]</sup>.

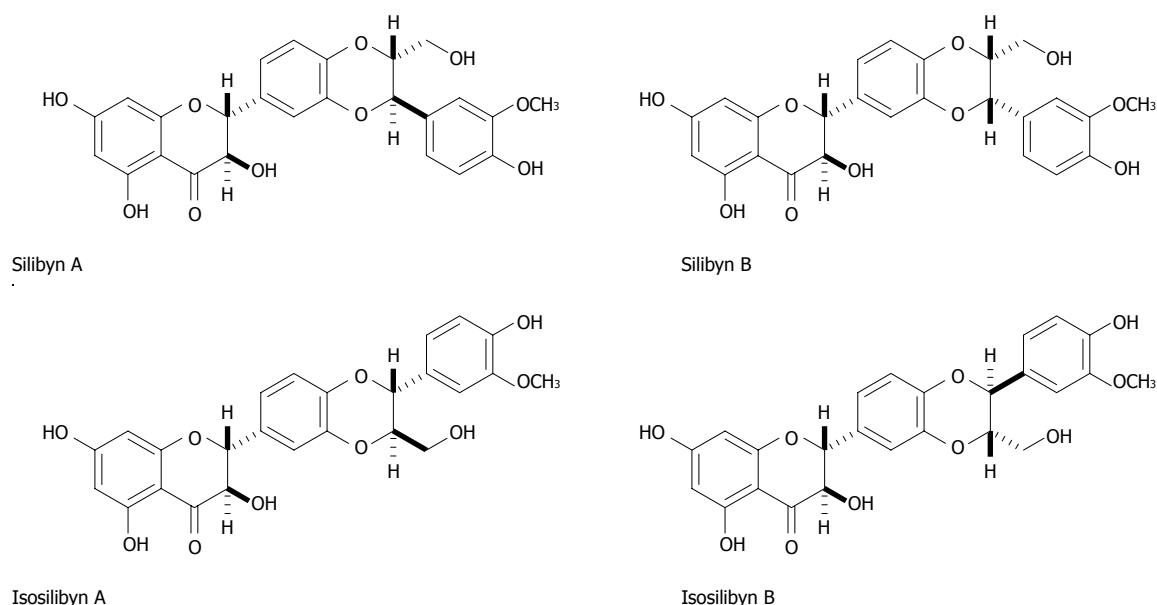


Figure 1 The chemical structure of silybin A, silybin B, isosilybin A, and isosilybin B, the extract of silymarin.

In previous studies, the inherent hepatoprotective and antioxidant activity of silymarin was shown to be caused by its control of free radicals (FR), which are produced by the hepatic metabolism of toxic substances such as Et-OH, acetaminophen (Paracetamol), or carbon tetrachloride. The FR damage cellular membranes and cause lipoperoxidation (LPO)<sup>[19]</sup>. The cytoprotective effect in liver is also caused by the inhibition of the cyclooxygenase cycle, leukotrienes, and the production of FR in Kupffer cells in mice. These affects reduce inflammation<sup>[20]</sup>, and it has been suggested that silymarin also performs the following functions: protecting against genomic injury, increasing hepatocyte protein synthesis, decreasing the activity of tumor promoters, stabilizing mast cells, chelating iron, and slowing calcium metabolism, among other activities that have been described in the literature<sup>[21]</sup>.

Silymarin has been reported to have antioxidant, immunomodulatory, anti-fibrotic, anti-proliferative, and antiviral properties. It also affects the synthesis of RNA and DNA. Furthermore, silymarin maintains the integrity of the hepatocyte membrane and impedes the entrance of toxic substances or xenobiotics. Due to its phenolic nature, it is capable of donating electrons to stabilize FR and reactive oxygen species (ROS). Silymarin also affects intracellular glutathione, which prevents lipoperoxidation of membranes<sup>[22]</sup>.

Pure compounds extracted from silymarin have been examined in cell lines infected with the hepatitis C virus (HCV). Polyak *et al*<sup>[23]</sup> showed that silymarin inhibits the replication of an infectious HCV genotype 2a strain (JFH1) in hepatoma cell cultures. The most effective compounds were isosilybin A, taxifolin, and silybinin, and these compounds reduced virus infection. The OS level induced by HCV, the tumor necrosis factor (TNF)- $\alpha$  level, and the transcription factor NF- $\kappa$ B were affected

by silybin A and silybin B treatment. In general, all of the compounds showed antiviral activity and reduced the OS level caused by HCV infection<sup>[24]</sup>.

The use of a silymarin extract in 72 patients with non-alcoholic hepatic steatosis (non-alcoholic fatty liver disease, NAFLD) on a controlled diet led to significantly reduced levels of alanine aminotransferase (ALT) and aspartame aminotransferase (AST) (AST/ALT < 1). Another parameter evaluated was  $\gamma$ -glutamyl transpeptidase ( $\gamma$ -GT). In NAFLD patients,  $\gamma$ -GT is high because of obesity, hyperinsulinemia, inflammation, and changes in the membrane permeability of the hepatocytes. The level of  $\gamma$ -GT decreased due to the silymarin-mediated inhibition of toxins entering the cells. Additionally, silymarin permits the stabilization of hepatocyte membranes. It also reduced the level of TNF- $\alpha$ , which reduces inflammation. A favorable change in the hepatorenal clearance index was also observed, which suggests a reduction in the accumulation of lipids in the liver. All of these results were visible after 6 mo of treatment<sup>[4]</sup>.

## EVIDENCE FROM STUDIES OF SILYMARIN AS A HEPATIC PROTECTOR AGAINST ETHANOL

Silymarin has both hepatoprotective and regenerative actions. The mechanism of action is a reduction of the FR formed by toxins that damage the cell membranes (LPO) and competitive inhibition through hepatocyte external cell membrane modification. Silymarin forms a complex that impedes the entrance of toxins into the interior of liver cells. Additionally, silymarin metabolically stimulates hepatic cells and activates the RNA iosynthesis of ribosomes to stimulate protein formation<sup>[25-27]</sup>. In a study published by Sandoval *et al*<sup>[28]</sup>, the authors observed a

silymarin protection effect in rat hepatic cells when they used it as a comparison factor to measure liver weight/animal weight % (hepatomegaly). The hepatomegaly was reduced compared to other groups that were administered antioxidant substances. There was no significant difference observed between the silymarin group and the silymarin-alcohol group. This result suggests liver protection by silymarin. Silymarin enhances hepatic glutathione generation by elevating cysteine availability and inducing cysteine synthesis while inhibiting its catabolism to taurine. The regulation of cysteine synthesis may subsequently contribute to the antioxidant defense<sup>[29]</sup>. Silymarin reduced collagen accumulation by 30% in biliary fibrosis induced in rats<sup>[30]</sup>. A study in humans reported a slight increase in the survival of patients with cirrhotic alcoholism compared with untreated controls<sup>[31]</sup>. Silymarin is perhaps the most frequently used natural compound for the treatment of hepatic diseases worldwide due to its antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and anti-fibrotic activities<sup>[32]</sup>.

Study conducted with guinea pigs (*Cavia porcellus*) examining hepatic fibrosis induced through the administration of Et-OH (4/kg of weight/d) for 90 d revealed a significant reduction of lesion markers such as ALT, AST, and  $\gamma$ -glutamyl after silymarin treatment. The gene expressions of cytochrome 450 2E1 (CYP2E1), TNF- $\alpha$ , transforming growth factor beta-1 (TGF- $\beta$ 1), and nuclear factor kappa-light-chain-enhancer of activated B cells-1 were also reduced. There was also a reduction in FR and reduced markers of fibrosis such as alpha smooth muscle actin, collagen  $\alpha_1$ (I), and in the caspase cytotoxicity marker. However, silymarin was less effective than vitamin C in this study. This result indicates that vitamin C is more effective in reducing the markers of damage and the production of ROS during Et-OH-induced lesions<sup>[33]</sup>. Another study evaluated the hepatoprotective effect by measuring the level of antioxidants and the effect of body weight (*bw*) in rats exposed to Et-OH (1.6 g/kg of *bw* for 4 wk). The results revealed that intoxication by Et-OH influences the *bw* of rats and the levels of thiobarbituric acid reactive substances (TBARS). The activity of the enzymes superoxide dismutase (SOD) and glutathione-S-transferase (GST) increased significantly. Conversely, glutathione (GSH), the activity of glutathione reductase (GR), glutathione peroxidase, and catalase (CAT) were reduced by exposure to Et-OH. The rats that received silybin and ascorbic acid had attenuated lesion markers, although the effect was greater in the group that received ascorbic acid than in the group treated with silybin. The study also concluded that stopping alcohol intake favors hepatic regeneration. Thus, it is more effective to take preventive measures than to implement curative treatment<sup>[34]</sup>. A mouse study examining the antioxidant, immunomodulatory activity and vascular function of mice showed a significant increase in OS levels in animals that received ethanol (1.6 g/kg per *bw*/d during 12 wk). Ethanol increased the production of TBARS, nitrite levels, and the activity of GST. Ethanol also significantly diminished the content of GSH and the activity of SOD,

CAT, GPX, and GR. Mice that received Et-OH plus silymarin (250 mg/kg of *bw*/d for 12 wk) normalized the altered parameters. In addition, the silymarin-treated mice had reduced levels of interleukin-10 (IL-10), TNF- $\alpha$ , interferon (IFN), IFN- $\gamma$ , vascular endothelial growth factor-A, and TGF- $\beta$ 1. The treatment also reduced the levels of IL-4 in the blood. The results of silymarin treatment were similar to mice that received vitamin C treatment<sup>[35]</sup>.

The use of Sylubim  $\beta$ -cyclodextrin has been studied in non-insulin-dependent patients with diabetes and alcoholic hepatopathy. Treatment with a 135-mg/d dose did not influence insulin secretion but did significantly reduce the glucose ( $P < 0.03$ ) and serum levels of triglycerides ( $P < 0.01$ ) compared with the placebo. These results suggest that this treatment improves the response to insulin<sup>[36]</sup>.

Clinical study conducted in 170 cirrhosis patients treated with 140 mg of silymarin three times daily for 41 months showed significant improvement, especially in the subgroups with alcoholic cirrhosis and initial "Child A" hepatic disease<sup>[31]</sup>. However, the results are controversial. A meta-analysis of 13 randomized clinical assays evaluated the beneficial or detrimental effects of Milk thistle and included patients with alcoholic and/or hepatitis B and C hepatic disease. The authors concluded that according to the data, Milk thistle did not significantly influence the improvement of these diseases. Conversely, it may have negatively affected the pathological condition<sup>[37]</sup>.

## CONCLUSION

There is substantial evidence suggesting that silymarin treatment improves hepatic diseases. However, some of the data are contradictory. Therefore, additional molecular studies investigating the mechanisms of action for these compounds are needed. It is known that silymarin does not possess adverse effects at high doses. Thus, it is a natural compound that is widely utilized in traditional medicine and has been investigated in formal scientific studies. Diverse hepatic damage models and ethanol injury have been utilized to study silymarin because ethanol is responsible for many cases of liver damage worldwide. The current data demonstrate that the use of silymarin treatment in alcoholic cirrhosis patients may attenuate the damage. However, silymarin treatment does not affect mortality.

## REFERENCES

- 1 Kim MN, Kim BK, Han KH. Hepatocellular carcinoma in patients with chronic hepatitis C virus infection in the Asia-Pacific region. *J Gastroenterol* 2013; **48**: 681-688 [PMID: 23463401 DOI: 10.1007/s00535-013-0770-9]
- 2 Gao B, Bataller R. Alcoholic liver disease: pathogenesis and new therapeutic targets. *Gastroenterology* 2011; **141**: 1572-1585 [PMID: 21920463 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.09.002]
- 3 Ramírez-Farías C, Madrigal-Santillán E, Gutiérrez-Salinas J, Rodríguez-Sánchez N, Martínez-Cruz M, Valle-Jones I, Gramlich-Martínez I, Hernández-Ceruelos A, Morales-González JA. Protective effect of some vitamins against the toxic

- action of ethanol on liver regeneration induced by partial hepatectomy in rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2008; **14**: 899-907 [PMID: 18240347 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.14.899]
- 4 **Cacciapuoti F**, Scognamiglio A, Palumbo R, Forte R, Cacciapuoti F. Silymarin in non alcoholic fatty liver disease. *World J Hepatol* 2013; **5**: 109-113 [PMID: 23556042 DOI: 10.4254/wjh.v5.i3.109]
- 5 **Pramyothin P**, Ngamtin C, Pongshompoo S, Chaichantipyuth C. Hepatoprotective activity of Phyllanthus amarus Schum. et Thonn. extract in ethanol treated rats: in vitro and in vivo studies. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2007; **114**: 169-173 [PMID: 17870264 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2007.07.037]
- 6 **Wong WL**, Abdulla MA, Chua KH, Kuppusamy UR, Tan YS, Sabaratnam V. Hepatoprotective Effects of Panus giganteus (Berk.) Corner against Thioacetamide- (TAA-) Induced Liver Injury in Rats. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2012; **2012**: 170303 [PMID: 22649470 DOI: 10.1155/2012/170303]
- 7 **Morales González JA**. Oxidative stress and chronic degenerative diseases-a role for antioxidants. Rijeka: Croatia InTech, 2013: 500
- 8 **Madrigal-Santillán E**, Madrigal-Bujaidar E, Cruz-Jaime S, Valadez-Vega MC, Sumaya-Martínez MT, Pérez-Ávila KG, Morales-González JA. The Chemoprevention of Chronic Degenerative Disease Through Dietary Antioxidants: Progress, Promise and Evidences. In: Morales-González JA, editor. Oxidative stress and chronic degenerative diseases-a role for antioxidants. Rijeka: Croatia InTech, 2013: 155-185
- 9 **Morazzoni P**, Bombardelli E. Silybum marianum (Cardu-sarianum). *Fitoterapia* 1995; **66**: 3-42
- 10 **Loguercio C**, Festi D. Silybin and the liver: from basic research to clinical practice. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 2288-2301 [PMID: 21633595 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i18.2288]
- 11 **Morales-González JA**, Gayosso-Islas E, Sánchez-Moreno C, Valadez-Vega C, Morales-González A, Esquivel-Soto J, Esquivel-Chirino C, García-Luna y González-Rubio M, Madrigal-Santillán E. Protective effect of silymarin on liver damage by xenobiotics. In: Oxidative stress and chronic degenerative diseases-a role for antioxidants. Rijeka: Croatia InTech, 2013
- 12 **Hawke RL**, Schrieber SJ, Soule TA, Wen Z, Smith PC, Reddy KR, Wahed AS, Belle SH, Afdhal NH, Navarro VJ, Berman J, Liu QY, Doo E, Fried MW. Silymarin ascending multiple oral dosing phase I study in noncirrhotic patients with chronic hepatitis C. *J Clin Pharmacol* 2010; **50**: 434-449 [PMID: 19841158 DOI: 10.1177/0091270009347475]
- 13 **Schrieber SJ**, Wen Z, Vourvahis M, Smith PC, Fried MW, Kashuba AD, Hawke RL. The pharmacokinetics of silymarin is altered in patients with hepatitis C virus and nonalcoholic Fatty liver disease and correlates with plasma caspase-3/7 activity. *Drug Metab Dispos* 2008; **36**: 1909-1916 [PMID: 18566043 DOI: 10.1124/dmd.107.019604]
- 14 **Sy-Cordero A**, Graf TN, Nakanishi Y, Wani MC, Agarwal R, Kroll DJ, Oberlies NH. Large-scale isolation of flavonolignans from Silybum marianum extract affords new minor constituents and preliminary structure-activity relationships. *Planta Med* 2010; **76**: 644-647 [PMID: 19941262 DOI: 10.1055/s-0029-1240624]
- 15 **Deep G**, Oberlies NH, Kroll DJ, Agarwal R. Isosilybin B and isosilybin A inhibit growth, induce G1 arrest and cause apoptosis in human prostate cancer LNCaP and 22Rv1 cells. *Carcinogenesis* 2007; **28**: 1533-1542 [PMID: 17389612]
- 16 **Su CH**, Chen LJ, Liao JF, Cheng JT. Dual effects of silymarin on nasopharyngeal carcinoma cells (NPC-TW01). *Forsch Komplementmed* 2013; **20**: 261-266 [PMID: 24030447 DOI: 10.1159/000354594]
- 17 **Lee MH**, Huang Z, Kim DJ, Kim SH, Kim MO, Lee SY, Xie H, Park SJ, Kim JY, Kundu JK, Bode AM, Surh YJ, Dong Z. Direct targeting of MEK1/2 and RSK2 by silybin induces cell-cycle arrest and inhibits melanoma cell growth. *Cancer Prev Res (Phila)* 2013; **6**: 455-465 [PMID: 23447564 DOI: 10.1158/1940-6207.CAPR-12-0425]
- 18 **Svobodová A**, Zdarilová A, Walterová D, Vostálová J. Flavonolignans from Silybum marianum moderate UVA-induced oxidative damage to HaCaT keratinocytes. *J Dermatol Sci* 2007; **48**: 213-224 [PMID: 17689055]
- 19 **Trouillas P**, Marsal P, Svobodová A, Vostálová J, Gazák R, Hrbáč J, Sedmera P, Kren V, Lazzaroni R, Duroux JL, Walterová D. Mechanism of the antioxidant action of silybin and 2,3-dehydrosilybin flavonolignans: a joint experimental and theoretical study. *J Phys Chem A* 2008; **112**: 1054-1063 [PMID: 18193843 DOI: 10.1021/jp075814h]
- 20 **Dehmlow C**, Erhard J, de Groot H. Inhibition of Kupffer cell functions as an explanation for the hepatoprotective properties of silibinin. *Hepatology* 1996; **23**: 749-754 [PMID: 8666328 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.1996.v23.pm0008666328]
- 21 **Flora K**, Hahn M, Rosen H, Benner K. Milk thistle (Silybum marianum) for the therapy of liver disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1998; **93**: 139-143 [PMID: 9468229 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.1998.00139.x]
- 22 **Karimi G**, Vahabzadeh M, Lari P, Rashedinia M, Moshiri M. "Silymarin", a promising pharmacological agent for treatment of diseases. *Iran J Basic Med Sci* 2011; **14**: 308-317 [PMID: 23492971]
- 23 **Polyak SJ**, Morishima C, Shuhart MC, Wang CC, Liu Y, Lee DY. Inhibition of T-cell inflammatory cytokines, hepatocyte NF-kappaB signaling, and HCV infection by standardized Silymarin. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 1925-1936 [PMID: 17484885]
- 24 **Polyak SJ**, Morishima C, Lohmann V, Pal S, Lee DY, Liu Y, Graf TN, Oberlies NH. Identification of hepatoprotective flavonolignans from silymarin. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 5995-5999 [PMID: 20231449 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0914009107]
- 25 **Abou Zid S**. Silymarin, Natural Flavonolignans from Milk Thistle. In: Venketeshwer R. Phytochemicals-A Global Perspective of Their Role in Nutrition and Health. Rijeka: Croatia InTech, 2012: 255-272
- 26 **Pietrangelo A**, Borella F, Casalgrandi G, Montosi G, Ceccarelli D, Gallesi D, Giovannini F, Gasparetto A, Masini A. Antioxidant activity of silybin in vivo during long-term iron overload in rats. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 1941-1949 [PMID: 7498660]
- 27 **Sonnenbichler J**, Goldberg M, Hane L, Madubunyi I, Vogl S, Zetl I. Stimulatory effect of Silibinin on the DNA synthesis in partially hepatectomized rat livers: non-response in hepatoma and other malign cell lines. *Biochem Pharmacol* 1986; **35**: 538-541 [PMID: 3004503]
- 28 **Sandoval M**, Lazarte K, Arnao I. Antioxidant liver protection of *Vitis vinifera* L. (grape) skin and seed. Available from: URL: [http://www.scielo.org.pe/scielo.php?pid=S1025-55832008000400006&script=sci\\_arttext](http://www.scielo.org.pe/scielo.php?pid=S1025-55832008000400006&script=sci_arttext)
- 29 **Kwon do Y**, Jung YS, Kim SJ, Kim YS, Choi DW, Kim YC. Alterations in sulfur amino acid metabolism in mice treated with silymarin: a novel mechanism of its action involved in enhancement of the antioxidant defense in liver. *Planta Med* 2013; **79**: 997-1002 [PMID: 23807810 DOI: 10.1055/s-0032-1328704]
- 30 **Boigk G**, Stroedter L, Herbst H, Waldschmidt J, Riecken EO, Schuppan D. Silymarin retards collagen accumulation in early and advanced biliary fibrosis secondary to complete bile duct obliteration in rats. *Hepatology* 1997; **26**: 643-649 [PMID: 9303494 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510260316]
- 31 **Ferenci P**, Dragosics B, Dittrich H, Frank H, Benda L, Lochs H, Meryn S, Base W, Schneider B. Randomized controlled trial of silymarin treatment in patients with cirrhosis of the liver. *J Hepatol* 1989; **9**: 105-113 [PMID: 2671116]
- 32 **Bergeheim I**, McClain CJ, Arteel GE. Treatment of alcoholic liver disease. *Dig Dis* 2005; **23**: 275-284 [PMID: 16508292 DOI: 10.1159/000090175]
- 33 **Abhilash PA**, Hari Krishnan R, Indira M. Ascorbic acid is

- superior to silymarin in the recovery of ethanol-induced inflammatory reactions in hepatocytes of guinea pigs. *J Physiol Biochem* 2013; **69**: 785-798 [PMID: 23653339 DOI: 10.1007/s13105-013-0255-6]
- 34 **Das SK**, Vasudevan DM. Protective effects of silymarin, a milk thistle (*Silybium marianum*) derivative on ethanol-induced oxidative stress in liver. *Indian J Biochem Biophys* 2006; **43**: 306-311 [PMID: 17133738]
  - 35 **Das SK**, Mukherjee S. Biochemical and immunological basis of silymarin effect, a milk thistle (*Silybum marianum*) against ethanol-induced oxidative damage. *Toxicol Mech Methods* 2012; **22**: 409-413 [PMID: 22409310 DOI: 10.3109/15376516.2012.673090]
  - 36 **Lirussi F**, Beccarello A, Zanette G, De Monte A, Donadon V, Velussi M, Crepaldi G. Silybin-beta-cyclodextrin in the treatment of patients with diabetes mellitus and alcoholic liver disease. Efficacy study of a new preparation of an anti-oxidant agent. *Diabetes Nutr Metab* 2002; **15**: 222-231 [PMID: 12416659]
  - 37 **Rambaldi A**, Jacobs BP, Iaquinto G, Gluud C. Milk thistle for alcoholic and/or hepatitis B or C virus liver diseases. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2005; (2): CD003620 [PMID: 15846671 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD003620.pub2]

**P- Reviewers:** Liu EQ, Pallottini V, Pajares MA, Yu DY  
**S- Editor:** Gou SX **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Zhang DN



## Khat (Catha Edulis) as a possible cause of autoimmune hepatitis

Shahzad Riyaz, Mohammad Imran, Dermot Gleeson, Mohammed A Karajeh

Shahzad Riyaz, Mohammad Imran, Dermot Gleeson, Mohammed A Karajeh, Liver Unit, Royal Hallamshire Hospital, Sheffield Teaching Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, Sheffield, S10 2JF, United Kingdom

**Author contributions:** Riyaz S contributed to data collection and analysis and wrote the manuscript; Imran M helped with data collection; Gleeson D supervised management of patients and contributed to revision of manuscript; Karajeh MA conceived the study, supervised management of patients and revised manuscript

**Correspondence to:** Dr. Mohammed A Karajeh, Consultant Gastroenterologist, Liver Unit, Royal Hallamshire Hospital, Sheffield Teaching Hospital NHS Foundation Trust, Glossop Road, Room P9, Sheffield, S10 2JF,

United Kingdom. [mohammed.karajeh@sth.nhs.uk](mailto:mohammed.karajeh@sth.nhs.uk)

Telephone: +44-114-2268746 Fax: +44-114-2268894

Received: September 12, 2013 Revised: December 20, 2013

Accepted: January 17, 2014

Published online: March 27, 2014

to its potential to cause drug induced liver injury. Five of these patients scored between 10 and 15 points, placing them in the probable group for having autoimmune hepatitis. All of these patients were treated with prednisolone and demonstrated a good response to immunosuppression.

**CONCLUSION:** One possible cause of hepatotoxicity with khat could be *via* triggering of autoimmune hepatitis in a genetically susceptible individual. Further studies are needed for confirmation.

© 2014 Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. All rights reserved.

**Key words:** Khat; Autoimmune hepatitis; Drug induced liver injury; Acute hepatitis; Herbs

**Core tip:** Khat causes hepatotoxicity. One possible mechanism could be by inducing autoimmune hepatitis.

### Abstract

**AIM:** To investigate the potential role of khat in triggering auto immune hepatitis.

**METHODS:** Patients with a history of khat use and acute hepatitis were identified using the computer database in the hepatology department at the Royal Hallamshire Hospital. They were then assessed for probability of having autoimmune hepatitis using the revised autoimmune hepatitis scoring criteria.

**RESULTS:** Six patients were identified. All of them had presented with acute hepatitis on a background of khat. All were male and five of these patients were of Somali origin, while one patient was from Yemen. The patients were given points on the modified autoimmune hepatitis score which is based on their liver enzymes, autoimmune screen, exclusion of viral hepatitis alcohol and drugs, immunoglobulin levels and liver histology. The patients were given a score of -4 for khat use due

Riyaz S, Imran M, Gleeson D, Karajeh MA. Khat (Catha Edulis) as a possible cause of autoimmune hepatitis. *World J Hepatol* 2014; 6(3): 150-154 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v6/i3/150.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v6.i3.150>

### INTRODUCTION

Khat (Catha Edulis Celestrae) is an evergreen shrub native to East Africa and Southern Arabia. It is chewed daily by over 20 million people in these countries. Chewing khat is a popular social habit, particularly in young males, that has spread to Yemeni, Somali and East African communities living in the United Kingdom and United States<sup>[1]</sup>. The use of khat as a stimulant is increasing primarily due to immigration. The Somali population in the United Kingdom is estimated to be as high as 90000, and

concerns over health and social problems associated with chewing khat have grown due to its potential side effects including hypertension, coronary vasospasm, myocardial infarction, delayed intestinal absorption, and mood disorders, which may result from its sympathomimetic action<sup>[2]</sup>.

Various studies and case reports have suggested that khat is also hepatotoxic, leading to deranged liver enzymes and also histopathological evidence of acute hepatocellular degeneration<sup>[3-7]</sup>. Recent studies in Somali populations have shown that khat can cause acute severe liver injury in humans due to its hepatotoxic effects<sup>[8,9]</sup>. Certain drugs that are known to be hepatotoxic cause liver damage by inducing an immunological response leading to a clinical presentation similar to autoimmune hepatitis (AIH). D'Souza *et al*<sup>[10]</sup> have described atypical presentation of AIH in young Somali men, although any history of khat use was not reported. Our aim was to assess the possible relationship of khat and autoimmune hepatitis in patients presenting with acute hepatitis on a background of khat use.

## MATERIALS AND METHODS

The Hepatology database at Sheffield Hospitals was searched for patients referred to the Hepatology department between 2005 and 2010 with liver problems and a history of khat use. All of the patients were tested for hepatitis A, B and C serology, autoimmune profile (including antinuclear antibodies, smooth muscle antibodies and LKM-1 antibodies), ceruloplasmin, alpha-1 antitrypsin, and serum ferritin, and underwent ultrasound scanning of the abdomen, which was normal. This was followed by a percutaneous liver biopsy. Each biopsy was reviewed with particular attention to features of interface hepatitis, lobular necroinflammation and biliary changes. The patients were categorized according to the probability of having autoimmune hepatitis: no evidence (scores < 10), probable (scores of 10-15) or definite (score of more than 15), according to the established international criteria for diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis<sup>[11,12]</sup>.

All patients were treated with prednisolone (0.5 mg per kilogram per day) initially. Complete response, partial response and no response were defined according to the original and revised international autoimmune hepatitis criteria<sup>[11,12]</sup>.

## RESULTS

Acute hepatitis was defined in accordance with the scheme established by the Council for International Organisations of Medical Sciences (CIOMS)<sup>[13]</sup>, and by the USFDA Drug Hepatotoxicities Steering Committee<sup>[14]</sup>. Eight patients were identified, of which six had presented with acute hepatitis on this basis. All were male and five of these patients were of Somali origin, while one patient was from Yemen. The age range of these patients was 24 to 57 years (mean 42.3 years). All of the patients had

been using khat for several years. There was no history of herbal medication (other than khat) or alcohol use in any patient. All other causes of liver injury were excluded *via* non invasive liver screen. Five of the six patients went on to have a liver biopsy. The patients were scored according to the revised autoimmune hepatitis criteria - (Table 1). They were given -4 for khat use on the scoring system due to its potential hepatotoxicity. Despite this, five out of six patients had a pre treatment score of 10 to 15 which placed them in the probable group for autoimmune hepatitis.

The five patients that were in the probable group had at least a partial response to corticosteroids with a greater than 50% reduction in their ALT after one month of treatment. Only two patients had more than 1 year of follow up, with one showing complete response to treatment. The patient that had scored negative for AIH (< 10) showed the least improvement with prednisolone and continued to have raised liver enzymes after 1 year of treatment. Four out of the six patients were maintained on long term low dose prednisolone while the other two patients were lost to follow up after 1 year. Two patients were commenced on azathioprine with complete response at 1 year follow-up. There was no history of re-exposure to khat.

Five out of six patients met the criteria for probable diagnosis of AIH but none of the patients actually met the criteria for confirmed diagnosis (score > 15). It has been reported previously that Somalian patients with AIH present atypically. It is therefore suggested that the AIH in these patients may have been triggered by khat use.

## DISCUSSION

Over 40 khat strains are grown and used in Southern Arabia and East Africa. It is consumed in the form of fresh leaves which may often be contaminated with pesticides. The leaves of khat contain the Pyrrolizidine alkaloids, Cathine, Cathidine, and Cathinone. The pleasure derived from khat chewing is attributed to the euphoric action of Cathinone which is a sympathomimetic amine, with properties similar to amphetamine<sup>[15]</sup>. Although Cathinone is restricted in the United Kingdom under the Misuse of Drugs Act 1971, khat possession and use are not<sup>[1]</sup>.

The diagnosis of drug induced liver injury (DILI) *vs* AIH triggered by khat is challenging. Various causality methods have been used for herbal induced liver injury and can be broadly divided into retrospective and prospective methods<sup>[16-25]</sup>. Establishing with any degree of certainty as to whether the liver disease is drug-induced can be very difficult<sup>[26]</sup>. The issue is further compounded by the relatively rare incidence of DILI, under reporting and potential drug interactions, due to which establishing the identity of the culprit drug may be impossible<sup>[27,28]</sup>. Furthermore, histology is often unhelpful as it only provides the type and degree of liver injury rather than the

**Table 1** Patient scores according to the revised criteria for diagnosing autoimmune hepatitis

Parameters	Score	Patient 1	Patient 2	Patient 3	Patient 4	Patient 5	Patient 6
ALP:ALT (or AST) ratio		125/1569	170/1223	187/1957	179/1005	298/1052	59/118
< 1.5	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
1.5-3.0	0						
> 3.0	-2						
Serum IgG above normal							
> 2.0	3	3		3	3	3	
1.5-2.0	2						2
1.0-1.5	1						
< 1.0	0		0				
ANA, SMA or LKM-1							
> 1:80	3			3		3	
Approximately 1:80	2				2		
Approximately 1:40	1						
< 1:40	0	0	0				0
AMA positive	-4	Negative	Negative	Negative	Negative	Negative	Negative
Viral hepatitis markers							
Positive	-3						
Negative	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
Drug History							
Positive	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4	-4
Negative	1						
Average alcohol intake							
< 25 g/d	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
> 60 g/d	-2						
Liver histology							
Interface hepatitis	3	3	3	3	3	N/A	3
Lymphoplasmacytic infiltrate	1	1	1				1
Rosetting of liver cells	1	1	1	1			1
None of the above	-5						
Biliary changes	-3						
Other changes	-3						
Other autoimmune diseases	2	2 (IDDM)	0	0	0	0	0
Optional additional parameters							
Sero positivity-other antibodies	2					2 (ENA+)	
HLA DR3 or DR4	1	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Pretreatment score		13	8	13	11	11	10

AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; ALT: Alanine aminotransferase; ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; ANA: Antinuclear antibodies; SMA: Anti-smooth muscle antibody; LKM-1: Anti-liver/kidney microsomal type 1; AMA: Anti-mitochondrial antibodies; N/A: Not available.

aetiology. The key to causality is to assess the temporal relationship between drug initiation and development of abnormal liver tests and to diligently exclude other causes of liver diseases. This includes liver injury induced by alcohol, viral hepatitis (acute hepatitis A, B, C and E), autoimmune causes, metabolic disorders, biliary obstruction and sepsis.

The diagnosis of AIH alone is based on the characteristic clinical and histological features as well as the absence of other potential causes of hepatitis. The revised criteria for diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis are considered the current gold standard<sup>[11,12]</sup>. Drugs can occasionally cause a clinical-serological picture similar to autoimmune hepatitis and may trigger autoimmune hepatitis in patients with an underlying genetic predisposition to autoimmune hepatitis, or the patients may develop AIH as a sequel of the drug itself. In a Swedish study of 23 patients who developed chronic DILI 23.1% were subsequently diagnosed with autoimmune hepatitis, the suspected drugs being ranitidine, enalapril, oestrogen, carbamazepine, and oestriol<sup>[29]</sup>. In a recent case series,

Peevers *et al*<sup>[9]</sup> described seven patients presenting with acute hepatitis who had a history of khat use. Two of those patients met the criteria for the diagnosis of probable AIH. It has been reported previously that Somalian patients with AIH present atypically. In a study of Somalian patients with a history of AIH, it was noted that all of the patients were male and scored in the probable group<sup>[10]</sup>. History of chewing khat was not mentioned in that particular study. However, in our series, all of the patients who presented with acute hepatitis had a history of khat use with five out of six patient meeting the criteria for probable AIH and demonstrating a good clinical response to immunosuppression. We therefore conclude that, in addition to producing DILI, khat may also trigger AIH in patients with a possible genetic pre-disposition.

Recently, Terschké *et al*<sup>[30]</sup> have validated the use of the CIOMS scale to be used with herbal induced liver injury (HILI) cases. Although the diagnosis of AIH is well founded in these patients, the causality assessment by means of CIOMS is not available. Also, the small number of patients in this series means that our hypoth-

esis of AIH being induced by khat can only be tentative and should be interpreted with caution. Whether these patients benefit from long-term immunosuppression after stopping khat remains unclear. Further studies of similar groups of patients are required to increase our understanding of this phenomenon and its management.

## COMMENTS

### Background

Khat is widely used in Southern arabia and East Africa. It is also known that autoimmune hepatitis presents atypically in these population as it is more common in males and presents at a younger age.

### Research frontiers

Khat is well known to cause liver damage but the mechanism of this remains elusive. Patients in the areas where khat is consumed, present with atypical autoimmune hepatitis - the cause of which is not known.

### Innovations and breakthroughs

The authors present an interesting observation of development of autoimmune hepatitis in a group of patients consuming Khat.

### Applications

People can treat these group of patients more effectively by understanding the possible mechanisms of liver damage caused by Khat use.

### Terminology

Khat (*Catha Edulis Celestrasae*) is an evergreen shrub native to East Africa and Southern Arabia. It is chewed daily by over 20 million people in these countries for its addictive and euphoric properties.

### Peer review

This is an important case-report and the manuscript reads well.

## REFERENCES

- 1 Griffiths P. Qat use in London: a study of qat use among a sample of Somalis living in London. Home Office drugs prevention initiative. London: Home Office, 1998
- 2 Al-Habori M. The potential adverse effects of habitual use of *Catha edulis* (khat). *Expert Opin Drug Saf* 2005; **4**: 1145-1154 [PMID: 16255671 DOI: 10.1517/14740338.4.6.1145]
- 3 Al-Mamary M, Al-Habori M, Al-Aghbari AM, Baker MM. Investigation into the toxicological effects of *Catha edulis* leaves: a short term study in animals. *Phytother Res* 2002; **16**: 127-132 [PMID: 11933113 DOI: 10.1002/ptr.835]
- 4 Douglas H, Boyle M, Lintzeris N. The health impacts of khat: a qualitative study among Somali-Australians. *Med J Aust* 2011; **195**: 666-669 [PMID: 22171861 DOI: 10.5694/mja11.10166]
- 5 Brostoff JM, Plymen C, Birns J. Khat--a novel cause of drug-induced hepatitis. *Eur J Intern Med* 2006; **17**: 383 [PMID: 16864024 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2005.12.010]
- 6 Stuyt RJ, Willems SM, Wagtmans MJ, van Hoek B. Chewing khat and chronic liver disease. *Liver Int* 2011; **31**: 434-436 [PMID: 21281438 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2010.02440.x]
- 7 Roelandt P, George C, d'Heygere F, Aerts R, Monbaliu D, Laleman W, Cassiman D, Verslype C, van Steenberghe W, Pirenne J, Wilmer A, Nevens F. Acute liver failure secondary to khat (*Catha edulis*)-induced necrotic hepatitis requiring liver transplantation: case report. *Transplant Proc* 2011; **43**: 3493-3495 [PMID: 22099826 DOI: 10.1016/j.transproceed.2011.09.032]
- 8 Chapman MH, Kajihara M, Borges G, O'Beirne J, Patch D, Dhillon AP, Crozier A, Morgan MY. Severe, acute liver injury and khat leaves. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **362**: 1642-1644 [PMID: 20427816 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc0908038]
- 9 Peevers CG, Moorghen M, Collins PL, Gordon FH, McCune CA. Liver disease and cirrhosis because of Khat chewing in UK Somali men: a case series. *Liver Int* 2010; **30**: 1242-1243 [PMID: 20408953 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2010.02228.x]
- 10 D'Souza R, Sinnott P, Glynn MJ, Sabin CA, Foster GR. An unusual form of autoimmune hepatitis in young Somali men. *Liver Int* 2005; **25**: 325-330 [PMID: 15780057 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2005.01088.x]
- 11 Alvarez F, Berg PA, Bianchi FB, Bianchi L, Burroughs AK, Cancado EL, Chapman RW, Cooksley WG, Czaja AJ, Desmet VJ, Donaldson PT, Eddleston AL, Fainboim L, Heathcote J, Homberg JC, Hoofnagle JH, Kakumu S, Krawitt EL, Mackay IR, MacSween RN, Maddrey WC, Manns MP, McFarlane IG, Meyer zum Büschenfelde KH, Zeniya M. International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group Report: review of criteria for diagnosis of autoimmune hepatitis. *J Hepatol* 1999; **31**: 929-938 [PMID: 10580593 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(99)80297-9]
- 12 Johnson PJ, McFarlane IG. Meeting report: International Autoimmune Hepatitis Group. *Hepatology* 1993; **18**: 998-1005 [PMID: 8406375 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840180435]
- 13 Benichou C. Criteria of drug-induced liver disorders. Report of an international consensus meeting. *J Hepatol* 1990; **11**: 272-276 [PMID: 2254635 DOI: 10.1016/0168-8278(90)90124-A]
- 14 Navarro V. Hepatic adverse event nomenclature document (online). Available from URL: [http://www.fda.gov/cder/llivertox/presentations2005/Vic\\_Navarro.ppt](http://www.fda.gov/cder/llivertox/presentations2005/Vic_Navarro.ppt)
- 15 Kalix P. Cathinone, a natural amphetamine. *Pharmacol Toxicol* 1992; **70**: 77-86 [PMID: 1508843 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-0773.1992.tb00434.x]
- 16 Danan G, Benichou C. Causality assessment of adverse reactions to drugs--I. A novel method based on the conclusions of international consensus meetings: application to drug-induced liver injuries. *J Clin Epidemiol* 1993; **46**: 1323-1330 [PMID: 8229110 DOI: 10.1016/0895-4356(93)90101-6]
- 17 Benichou C, Danan G, Flahault A. Causality assessment of adverse reactions to drugs--II. An original model for validation of drug causality assessment methods: case reports with positive rechallenge. *J Clin Epidemiol* 1993; **46**: 1331-1336 [PMID: 8229111 DOI: 10.1016/0895-4356(93)90102-7]
- 18 Teschke R, Schwarzenboeck A, Hennermann KH. Causality assessment in hepatotoxicity by drugs and dietary supplements. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2008; **66**: 758-766 [PMID: 19032721 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2125.2008.03264.x]
- 19 Maria VA, Victorino RM. Development and validation of a clinical scale for the diagnosis of drug-induced hepatitis. *Hepatology* 1997; **26**: 664-669 [PMID: 9303497 DOI: 10.1002/hep.510260319]
- 20 Naranjo CA, Busto U, Sellers EM, Sandor P, Ruiz I, Roberts EA, Janecek E, Domecq C, Greenblatt DJ. A method for estimating the probability of adverse drug reactions. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 1981; **30**: 239-245 [PMID: 7249508 DOI: 10.1038/clpt.1981.154]
- 21 Karch FE, Lasagna L. Toward the operational identification of adverse drug reactions. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 1977; **21**: 247-254 [PMID: 837643]
- 22 Teschke R, Wolff A. Regulatory causality evaluation methods applied in kava hepatotoxicity: are they appropriate? *Regul Toxicol Pharmacol* 2011; **59**: 1-7 [PMID: 20854865 DOI: 10.1016/j.yrtph.2010.09.006]
- 23 Fontana RJ, Watkins PB, Bonkovsky HL, Chalasani N, Davern T, Serrano J, Rochon J. Drug-Induced Liver Injury Network (DILIN) prospective study: rationale, design and conduct. *Drug Saf* 2009; **32**: 55-68 [PMID: 19132805 DOI: 10.2165/00002]
- 24 The use of the WHO-UMC system for standardised case causality assessment. Available from: URL: <http://whoumc.org/Graphics/24734.pdf>
- 25 Teschke R, Schulze J, Schwarzenboeck A, Eickhoff A, Frenzel C. Herbal hepatotoxicity: suspected cases assessed for alternative causes. *Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2013; **25**: 1093-1098 [PMID: 23510966 DOI: 10.1097/MEG]
- 26 Verma S, Kaplowitz N. Diagnosis, management and prevention of drug-induced liver injury. *Gut* 2009; **58**: 1555-1564 [PMID: 19834119 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2008.163675]

- 27 **Fontana RJ**. Acute liver failure due to drugs. *Semin Liver Dis* 2008; **28**: 175-187 [PMID: 18452117 DOI: 10.1055/s-2008-1-073117]
- 28 **Chang CY**, Schiano TD. Review article: drug hepatotoxicity. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2007; **25**: 1135-1151 [PMID: 17451560 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2007.03307.x]
- 29 **Björnsson E**, Davidsdottir L. The long-term follow-up af-  
ter idiosyncratic drug-induced liver injury with jaundice. *J Hepatol* 2009; **50**: 511-517 [PMID: 19155082 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2008.10.021]
- 30 **Teschke R**, Frenzel C, Schulze J, Eickhoff A. Herbal hepatotoxicity: challenges and pitfalls of causality assessment methods. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 2864-2882 [PMID: 23704820]

**P- Reviewers:** Agustin C, Ding WX, Grattagliano I, Mehmet C, Neil LJ, Teschke R **S- Editor:** Song XX **L- Editor:** A  
**E- Editor:** Zhang DN



## Nested stromal-epithelial tumour of the liver: An unusual liver entity

Fabio Procopio, Luca Di Tommaso, Silvia Armenia, Vittorio Quagliuolo, Massimo Roncalli, Guido Torzilli

Fabio Procopio, Guido Torzilli, Department of Hepatobiliary Surgery, University of Milan, Humanitas Research Hospital, Rozzano, 20089 Milan, Italy

Luca Di Tommaso, Silvia Armenia, Massimo Roncalli, Department of Pathology, University of Milan, Humanitas Research Hospital, Rozzano, 20089 Milan, Italy

Vittorio Quagliuolo, Department of Surgical Oncology, Humanitas Research Hospital, Rozzano, 20089 Milan, Italy

Author contributions: Procopio F wrote the manuscript; Di Tommaso L and Armenia S reviewed the anatomopathological data; Roncalli M and Torzilli G reviewed and approved the manuscript. Correspondence to: Fabio Procopio, MD, Department of Hepatobiliary Surgery, University of Milan, Humanitas Research Hospital, Via Manzoni 56, Rozzano, 20089 Milan, Italy. [procopio.fabio@gmail.com](mailto:procopio.fabio@gmail.com)

Telephone: +39-2-82247278 Fax: +39-2-82244590

Received: October 2, 2013 Revised: December 16, 2013

Accepted: January 17, 2014

Published online: March 27, 2014

**Core tip:** Rare cases of hepatic nested stromal-epithelial tumours (NSETs), consisting of non-hepatocytic mixed stromal and epithelial neoplasms with associated calcification and ossification, have been previously described. To date, NSETs' behaviour and prognosis are completely unclear. We report the case of a 23-year-old female who underwent liver resection for a large hepatic, calcifying NSET. Details about preoperative imaging and the clinical and histopathological features of this very rare hepatic tumour are reported.

Procopio F, Di Tommaso L, Armenia S, Quagliuolo V, Roncalli M, Torzilli G. Nested stromal-epithelial tumor of the liver: An unusual liver entity. *World J Hepatol* 2014; 6(3): 155-159 Available from: URL: <http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/full/v6/i3/155.htm> DOI: <http://dx.doi.org/10.4254/wjh.v6.i3.155>

### Abstract

Nested stromal-epithelial tumours (NSETs) of the liver have been reported to be extremely unusual primary hepatic neoplasms. To date, few cases have been described in the literature. NSETs have been defined as non-hepatocytic and non-biliary tumours of the liver consisting of nests of epithelial and spindled cells, myofibroblastic stroma and variable intralesional calcification and ossification. Here, we report a case of a young female who underwent liver resection for a large hepatic lesion that proved to be a calcifying NSET on pathological examination. Details about the clinical and histopathological features of the tumour are reported.

© 2014 Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. All rights reserved.

**Key words:** Nested stromal-epithelial tumour; Hepatic tumour; Liver resection; Hepatic mixed tumour; Hepatectomy

### INTRODUCTION

Nested stromal-epithelial tumours (NSETs) of the liver are very rare primary tumours characterised by unexampled clinicopathological features. To date, only isolated cases<sup>[1]</sup> and small series have been reported in the literature<sup>[2-4]</sup>. NSETs have been defined as a non-hepatocytic and non-biliary tumour of the liver consisting of nests of epithelial and spindled cells with associated myofibroblastic stroma and variable intralesional calcification and ossification<sup>[2]</sup>. This rare liver malignancy appears solid on imaging and has been reported to be isolated or occasionally associated with hormone cortisol-related syndrome. Herein, we describe a patient who underwent radical hepatectomy for a large calcifying NSET of the liver.

### CASE REPORT

#### Clinical history

In January 2012, a 23-year-old female was referred to our

unit for recurrent dull abdominal pain associated with abdominal distension and dyspepsia. The patient had a past history of being negative for hepatitis but positive for the consumption of oral contraceptives during the previous 5 years.

On physical examination, a palpable mass in the upper abdomen was revealed. No Cushingoid or other clinical features were evident.

Laboratory tests revealed an altered serum level of aspartate aminotransferase (36 IU/L; normal range: 5-30), alanine aminotransferase (297 IU/L; normal range: 5-35), alkaline phosphatase (62 IU/L; normal range: 4-150) and gamma-glutamyltransferase (285 IU/L; normal range: 6-32). Virological markers for hepatitis B and C yielded negative results. Tumour markers, including carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) and alpha-fetoprotein (AFP), were negative, whereas the level of carbohydrate antigen 19-9 (CA19-9) was elevated (98 IU/mL; normal value: < 40).

Abdominal computed tomography (CT) revealed a well-circumscribed liver lesion of 16 cm in size involving the left hemiliver, part of the right anterior section (S5-8)<sup>[5]</sup> and the paracaval portion of the caudate lobe (S1pc). Extensive vascular invasion including the left hepatic vein (LHV) and middle hepatic vein (MHV) at the hepatocaval confluence and the left portal pedicle (LPP) was evident. The lesion appeared solid and heterogeneous, with a rim-like enhancement on the arterial phase and a gradual centripetal enhancement on delayed phases. Multiple intralesional calcifications were also evident.

On magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), the tumour showed hypointensity on T1-weighted images and hyperintensity on both T2- and diffusion-weighted images (DWI), with small central necrotic collections. An inhomogeneous pattern with subcentimetric calcifications showing mostly hypointensity on both T1- and T2-weighted images was depicted. On gadolinium-enhanced images, the lesion showed a heterogeneous enhancement pattern on the arterial phase and washout in the portal and parenchymal phases (Figure 1A). The hepatocyte-specific delayed phase (Primovist, Bayer-Schering, Berlin, Germany) showed a hypointense lesion on T1-weighted images, with well-defined margins and a hyperintense capsule.

The work-up was completed with total-body <sup>11</sup>C-choline positron emission tomography (PET), which showed only slight pathological uptake of the tracer into the liver (Figure 1B). Based on these preoperative findings, a percutaneous lesion biopsy was not considered, and the patient was candidate to liver resection with a presumptive diagnosis of fibrolamellar hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) or hepatocholangiocarcinoma.

At laparotomy, peritoneal carcinomatosis was excluded. During liver exploration, a huge, hard liver tumour entirely occupying the left hemiliver, part of S5-8 and the S1pc was confirmed. On intraoperative ultrasonography (IOUS), no additional lesions were detected, and the tumour showed well-defined margins and a heterogeneous echogenicity, with several intralesional hyperechoic spots

due to multiple calcifications. Extensive involvement of the LHV, MHV and LPP was confirmed. Once the intraoperative staging was completed, the patient underwent an extended left hepatectomy with left and middle hepatic vein resection for radical removal of the mass. The specimen weighed 2000 g. Intraoperative blood loss was 100 mL, and the patient did not receive a blood transfusion. The postoperative course was uneventful, and the patient was discharged on the 10<sup>th</sup> postoperative day. Currently, the patient is alive and disease free 21 mo after surgery.

### Pathological features

Grossly, the tumour had well-defined margins, was arranged in yellow lobules with several granular and rasping foci and was 16 cm in size (Figure 2A). On histology, the tumour was composed of well-defined nests of epithelial cells separated by strands of stromal cells and focally admixed with calcifying material (Figure 2B). The epithelial component was represented by polygonal to spindle-shaped cells, devoid of overt cytological atypia; stained positive for CKpool, CK19 and CD56; and stained negative for Hep Par-1 (hepatocyte paraffin 1) and AFP. Scattered nuclei were also immunoreactive for WT1 (Figure 2C). The stromal component stained positive for vimentin and smooth muscle actin. The mitotic index was < 5 mitoses/10 HPFs, and 10%-15% of cells stained positive for Ki67.

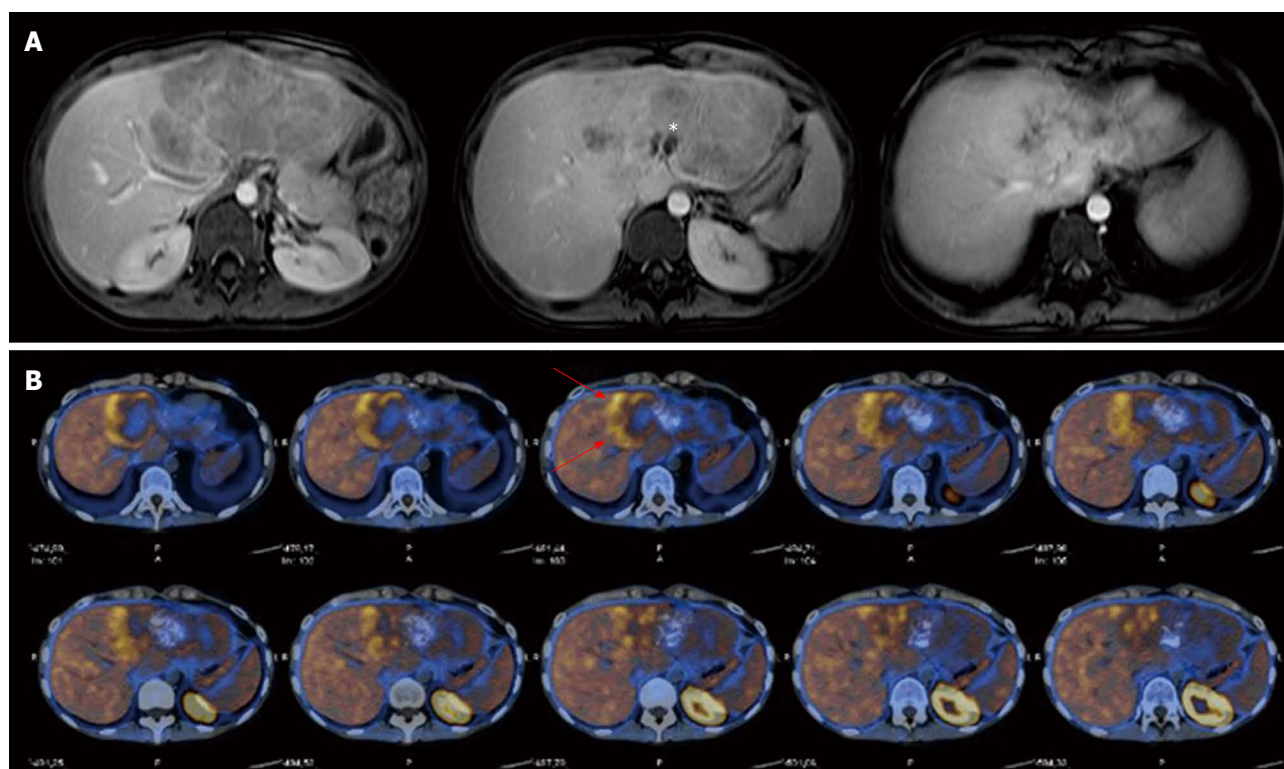
### Molecular genetic study

Several neoplastic nuclei were positive for the EWS-WT1 fusion transcript (Figure 2D) but negative for the SYT-SSX fusion transcript.

## DISCUSSION

Stromal-epithelial tumours are extremely rare conditions of the liver, and very few cases have been previously described<sup>[1-4]</sup>. The unusual entity defined as an NSET typically displays an arrangement of cellular nests composed of spindled or epithelioid cells surrounded by desmoplastic stroma and associated with variable calcifications or ossifications. To our knowledge, few cases of NSETs have been reported<sup>[1-4,6]</sup>; of these, only one has been described in Asian descendants<sup>[6]</sup>.

This primary liver lesion represents an unexampled clinicopathological entity with an unclear pathogenesis. However, based on immunohistochemical studies showing an intimate correlation of tumoural cell nests with bile ducts and the expression of specific antigens, as well as the shared expression of CD56 by both components, the origin of this tumour in a hepatic mesenchymal precursor cell with primitive differentiation along the bile duct lineage is strongly suspected<sup>[3,4]</sup>. The expression of WT1 is also in favour of this hypothesis, as this multifunctional protein is a requisite component of the mesenchymal-to-epithelial transformation during certain processes in organogenesis<sup>[7]</sup>.



**Figure 1 Radiological imaging.** A: Abdominal magnetic resonance imaging scan showing a 16 cm diameter inhomogeneous and partially calcified (asterisk) mass of the left liver; B: Total-body  $^{11}\text{C}$ -choline positron emission tomography showed a slight pathological uptake of the tracer in the peripheral part of the tumour (red arrows).

NSETs predominantly occur in young females and are more frequently located in the right hemiliver. Conversely, in the case described here, the tumour occupied the left hemiliver.

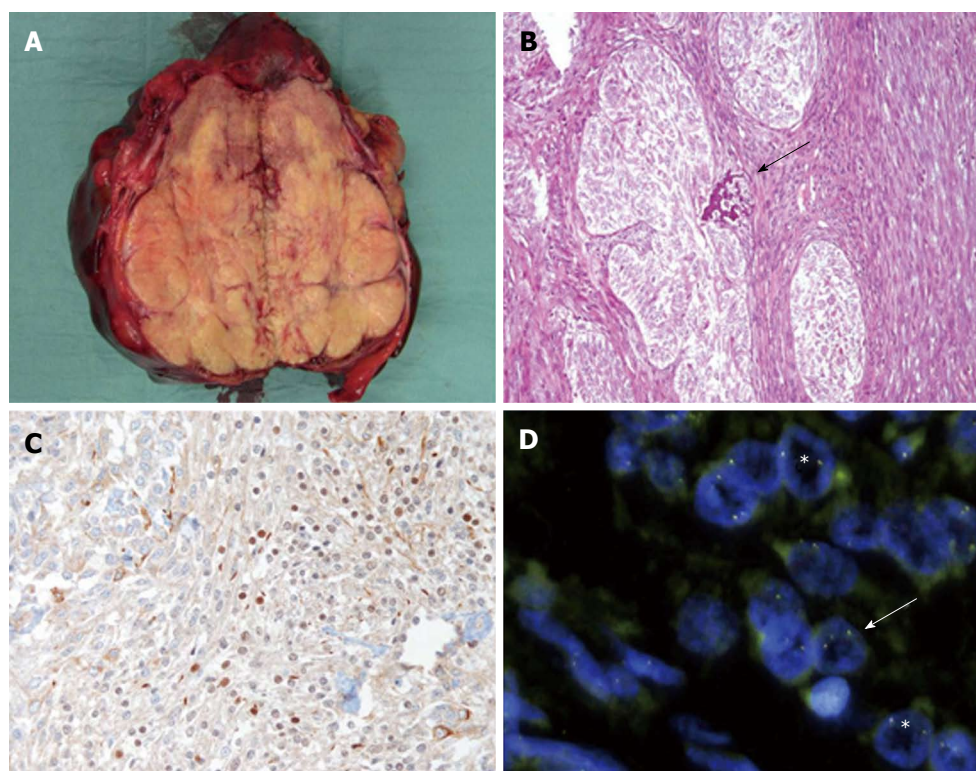
The development of this tumour may occur as an isolated condition or in association with a hormone-related syndrome, such as Cushing syndrome. Heerema-McKenney *et al.*<sup>[3]</sup> reported two cases of NSETs occurring in paediatric patients that were associated with Cushing syndrome due to an elevated adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) level<sup>[4]</sup>. Additionally, Rod *et al.*<sup>[8]</sup> described a 17-year-old female patient affected by a large hepatic NSET causing mild Cushingoid syndrome secondary to moderate-to-high ACTH secretion. In our experience, Cushing-like symptoms were not evident.

From a clinical standpoint, one of the main differential diagnoses is a mixed epithelial and mesenchymal hepatoblastoma, although very few cases have been reported in adults<sup>[9]</sup>. However, this tumour shows components of foetal and/or embryonal hepatocyte differentiation and lacks the typical stromal architecture of NSETs. Synovial sarcomas and desmoplastic small round cell tumours (DSRCTs) are other diagnostic possibilities to consider that can be distinguished based on specific histologic features. Indeed, in the current study, the absence of a demonstrable carcinoma component and the SYT-SSX fusion transcript helped to exclude the diagnosis of synovial sarcoma. However, cases of synovial sarcoma with extensive calcification and osteoid formation have been reported<sup>[10,11]</sup>. In our case, the histologic features

of the NSET were slightly reminiscent of those of DSRCTs<sup>[12,13]</sup>, as both tumours exhibited nests of WT1-positive cells and were positive for the EWS-WT1 fusion transcript. The NSET, however, can be distinguished from DSRCTs by the NSET's typical arrangement of myofibroblastic collars and fibrovascular supporting stroma, which differed from the fibrous stroma of DSRCTs. However, the NSET was not immunoreactive for desmin, whereas the opposite is observed in DSRCTs. In the case reported here, based on preoperative imaging features, a diagnosis of fibrolamellar HCC or eventually mixed hepatocholangiocarcinoma was considered.

Interestingly, the patient had taken oral contraceptive pills (OCPs) during the previous 5 years. As reported for hepatic adenoma<sup>[14]</sup>, a possible role for OCPs in the occurrence of the NSET could be considered. However, no staining for hepatocyte antigens was demonstrated in any tumour cells, which led us to exclude a likely correlation with hepatic adenoma. Furthermore, a lack of progesterone and oestrogen receptors in tumoural cells contributed to doubt about the hypothetical correlation between NSET occurrence and OCP consumption. However, more studies on a larger number of cases are likely needed before a possible correlation can be determined.

NSET prognosis remains an unclear matter, but based on current information, this tumour seems to have low proliferation activity and an indolent course, behaving as a low-grade malignancy featuring unusual extrahepatic spread and a possible presentation since childhood. However, specific tumoural features, a large size and vascular



**Figure 2** Pathological features of the reported calcifying nested stromal-epithelial tumor of the liver. A: At gross inspection the lesion shows well defined margins and is arranged in lobules; B: At histology the lesion is characterized by the presence of well defined nests of epithelial cells separated by strand of stromal cells, focally admixed with calcifying deposits (arrow); C: Scattered neoplastic cells stain positive for WT-1 immunostaining; D: Some neoplastic nuclei showed well separated green and orange probes signals (arrow), in keeping with a translocation involving *EWSR1* gene (FISH); some neoplastic nuclei (asterisks) did not show the same break apart pattern.

invasion seem to be associated with a higher probability of recurrence. Brodsky *et al*<sup>[15]</sup> reported experiences of recurrent NSETs of the liver with lymph node metastasis after partial hepatectomy. Hommann *et al*<sup>[16]</sup> reported a case of lung metastasis after liver transplantation for an unresectable NSET. Based on these experiences, although the risk of relapse seems negligible, a careful postoperative follow-up is recommended.

To date, the benefit of systemic chemotherapy and the most appropriate regimen to adopt remain poorly defined. In paediatric experience, preliminary results showing a minimal response for an unresectable NSET when a hepatoblastoma and sarcoma protocol regimen was adopted have been reported<sup>[3]</sup>. However, this topic remains completely unexplored.

Surgery seems to be the pivotal therapeutic approach, remaining the best strategy to guarantee longer survival and a better prognosis<sup>[1,3]</sup>. Our experience attempts to convey more information about the reliability of the surgical approach in the case of a resectable NSET. In this sense, our clinical experience confirms that liver resection allows the safe attainment of complete tumour clearance, even in advanced disease. Conversely, considering the low tendency of NSETs to relapse and previous unsuccessful experiences, at least for oncological control, liver transplantation generally should not be recommended, at least as a first choice<sup>[16]</sup>. Liver transplantation would be potentially useful for those patients with unresectable but

not extrahepatic disease.

In conclusion, this report aimed to clarify the clinical history, therapy, imaging pattern and histopathological features of a very rare primary liver tumour that is still poorly characterised. Awareness of hepatic NSET occurrence may help to identify additional cases, enlarging knowledge about NSETs' clinical behaviour and prognostic features and limiting the possibility that these tumours could be misdiagnosed and confused with other aggressive liver malignancies.

## COMMENTS

### Case characteristics

Symptoms were featured by dull abdominal pain associated with abdominal distension and dyspepsia.

### Clinical diagnosis

Palpable mass in the upper abdomen. Cushingoid clinical features can be sometimes detected.

### Differential diagnosis

Mixed epithelial and mesenchymal hepatoblastoma, synovial sarcoma and desmoplastic small round cell tumour are the main differential diagnosis. Histologic and immunohistochemical analysis help to distinguish them.

### Laboratory diagnosis

Laboratory tests revealed altered serum level of AST, ALT, alkaline phosphatase and gamma glutamyltransferase. Virological markers for hepatitis B and C and tumour markers including carcinoembryonic antigen, alpha-fetoprotein were negative, while, the CA19-9 was elevated.

### Imaging diagnosis

Preoperative imaging (Computed tomography, Magnetic resonance imaging

scan) revealed a well-circumscribed liver lesion involving the left hemiliver. The lesion appeared solid and heterogeneous with a rim-like enhancement at contrast phase with multiple intra-lesional calcifications. An extensive vascular invasion was evident.

### Pathological diagnosis

Nested stromal-epithelial tumours (NSETs) are a non-hepatocytic and non-biliary tumor of the liver consisting in nests of epithelial and spindled cells with associated myofibroblastic stroma and variable intralesional calcification and ossification.

### Treatment

Surgery seems the pivotal therapeutic approach remaining the best strategy to guarantee longer survival and a better prognosis.

### Related reports

Heerema-McKenney *et al*, Rod *et al* reported cases of NSETs occurring in pediatric patients and associated with a Cushing syndrome. Brodsky *et al* reported experiences of recurrent NSET of the liver with lymph-node metastasis after partial hepatectomy. Hommann *et al* reported a case of lung metastasis after liver transplantation for unresectable NSET.

### Term explanation

WT1 is a multifunctional zinc-finger protein involved in mesenchyme-to-epithelium transformation which suggests an origin of NSET in a hepatic mesenchymal precursor cell with primitive differentiation along the bile duct lineage. EWS-WT1 and SYT-SSX fusion transcript are genes can help to distinguish NSETs from other liver malignancy.

### Experiences and lessons

NSETs occur predominantly in young female and their development may occur as an isolated condition, otherwise associated with hormone-related syndrome, such as Cushing syndrome. From a clinical standpoint, histologic and immunohistochemical studies are essential to distinguish NSETs from other malignancy because of lack of a typical imaging pattern.

### Peer review

In the present study, the authors report a case with a nested stromal-epithelial tumor in the liver, which has been rarely reported worldwide. They fully examined the pathological features of the tumor, by using immunohistochemical analysis. This report has originality, figures are clear, and the discussion is well written.

## REFERENCES

- Grazi GL, Vetrone G, d'Errico A, Caprara G, Ercolani G, Cescon M, Ravaioli M, Del Gaudio M, Vivarelli M, Zanello M, Pinna AD. Nested stromal-epithelial tumor (NSET) of the liver: a case report of an extremely rare tumor. *Pathol Res Pract* 2010; **206**: 282-286 [PMID: 19487085 DOI: 10.1016/j.prp.2009.04.012]
- Heywood G, Burgart LJ, Nagorney DM. Ossifying malignant mixed epithelial and stromal tumor of the liver: a case report of a previously undescribed tumor. *Cancer* 2002; **94**: 1018-1022 [PMID: 11920471 DOI: 10.1002/cncr.10345]
- Heerema-McKenney A, Leuschner I, Smith N, Sennesh J, Finegold MJ. Nested stromal epithelial tumor of the liver: six cases of a distinctive pediatric neoplasm with frequent calcifications and association with cushing syndrome. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2005; **29**: 10-20 [PMID: 15613852]
- Makhlouf HR, Abdul-Al HM, Wang G, Goodman ZD. Calcifying nested stromal-epithelial tumors of the liver: a clinicopathologic, immunohistochemical, and molecular genetic study of 9 cases with a long-term follow-up. *Am J Surg Pathol* 2009; **33**: 976-983 [PMID: 19363442 DOI: 10.1097/PAS.0b013e31819c1ab3]
- Terminology Committee of the International Hepato-Pancreato-Biliary Association. Terminology of liver anatomy and resections. *HPB Surg* 2000; **2**: 333-339
- Wang Y, Zhou J, Huang WB, Rao Q, Ma HH, Zhou XJ. Calcifying nested stroma-epithelial tumor of the liver: a case report and review of literature. *Int J Surg Pathol* 2011; **19**: 268-272 [PMID: 21320858 DOI: 10.1177/1066896910394841]
- Sainio K, Hellstedt P, Kreidberg JA, Saxén L, Sariola H. Differential regulation of two sets of mesonephric tubules by WT-1. *Development* 1997; **124**: 1293-1299 [PMID: 9118800]
- Rod A, Voicu M, Chiche L, Bazille C, Mittre H, Louiset E, Reznik Y. Cushing's syndrome associated with a nested stromal epithelial tumor of the liver: hormonal, immunohistochemical, and molecular studies. *Eur J Endocrinol* 2009; **161**: 805-810 [PMID: 19690085 DOI: 10.1530/EJE-09-0453]
- Remes-Troche JM, Montaña-Loza A, Meza-Junco J, García-Leiva J, Torre-Delgadillo A. Hepatoblastoma in adult age. A case report and literature review. *Ann Hepatol* 2006; **5**: 179-181 [PMID: 17060878]
- Holla P, Hafez GR, Slukvin I, Kalayoglu M. Synovial sarcoma, a primary liver tumor--a case report. *Pathol Res Pract* 2006; **202**: 385-387 [PMID: 16503097 DOI: 10.1016/j.prp.2005.12.006]
- Srivastava A, Nielsen PG, Dal Cin P, Rosenberg AE. Monophasic synovial sarcoma of the liver. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 2005; **129**: 1047-1049 [PMID: 16048399]
- Gerald WL, Miller HK, Battifora H, Miettinen M, Silva EG, Rosai J. Intra-abdominal desmoplastic small round-cell tumor. Report of 19 cases of a distinctive type of high-grade polyphenotypic malignancy affecting young individuals. *Am J Surg Pathol* 1991; **15**: 499-513 [PMID: 1709557 DOI: 10.1097/0000478-199106000-00001]
- Ordóñez NG. Desmoplastic small round cell tumor: I: a histopathologic study of 39 cases with emphasis on unusual histological patterns. *Am J Surg Pathol* 1998; **22**: 1303-1313 [PMID: 9808123 DOI: 10.1097/0000478-199811000-00001]
- Rosenberg L. The risk of liver neoplasia in relation to combined oral contraceptive use. *Contraception* 1991; **43**: 643-652 [PMID: 1651205 DOI: 10.1016/0010-7824(91)90007-3]
- Brodsky SV, Sandoval C, Sharma N, Yusuf Y, Facciuto ME, Humphrey M, Yeh YA, Braun A, Melamed M, Finegold MJ. Recurrent nested stromal epithelial tumor of the liver with extrahepatic metastasis: case report and review of literature. *Pediatr Dev Pathol* 2008; **11**: 469-473 [PMID: 18338937 DOI: 10.2350/07-12-0391.1]
- Hommann M, Kaemmerer D, Daffner W, Prasad V, Baum RP, Petrovitch A, Sauerbrey A, Katenkamp K, Kaufmann R, Settmacher U. Nested stromal epithelial tumor of the liver--liver transplantation and follow-up. *J Gastrointest Cancer* 2011; **42**: 292-295 [PMID: 21221846 DOI: 10.1007/s12029-010-9248-7]

**P- Reviewers:** Homayounfar K, Ji G, Ivanovski PI, Matsuda Y, Nanashima A **S- Editor:** Qi Y **L- Editor:** A **E- Editor:** Zhang DN





## INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS

### GENERAL INFORMATION

*World Journal of Hepatology* (*World J Hepatol*, *WJH*, online ISSN 1948-5182, DOI: 10.4254) is a peer-reviewed open access (OA) academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

#### Aim and scope

*WJH* covers topics concerning arrhythmia, heart failure, vascular disease, stroke, hypertension, prevention and epidemiology, dyslipidemia and metabolic disorders, cardiac imaging, pediatrics, nursing, and health promotion. Priority publication will be given to articles concerning diagnosis and treatment of hepatology diseases. The following aspects are covered: Clinical diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, differential diagnosis, imaging tests, pathological diagnosis, molecular biological diagnosis, immunological diagnosis, genetic diagnosis, functional diagnostics, and physical diagnosis; and comprehensive therapy, drug therapy, surgical therapy, interventional treatment, minimally invasive therapy, and robot-assisted therapy.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJH*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

*WJH* is edited and published by Baishideng Publishing Group (BPG). BPG has a strong professional editorial team composed of science editors, language editors and electronic editors. BPG currently publishes 42 OA clinical medical journals, including 41 in English, has a total of 15471 editorial board members or peer reviewers, and is a world first-class publisher.

#### Columns

The columns in the issues of *WJH* will include: (1) Editorial: The editorial board members are invited to make comments on an important topic in their field in terms of its current research status and future directions to lead the development of this discipline; (2) Frontier: The editorial board members are invited to select a highly cited cutting-edge original paper of his/her own to summarize major findings, the problems that have been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions to help readers understand his/her important academic point of view and future research directions in the field; (3) Diagnostic Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality diagnostic advances in their field to improve the diagnostic skills of readers. The topic covers general clinical diagnosis, differential diagnosis, pathological diagnosis, laboratory diagnosis, imaging diagnosis, endoscopic diagnosis, biotechnological diagnosis, functional diagnosis, and physical diagnosis; (4) Therapeutics Advances: The editorial board members are invited to write high-quality therapeutic advances in their field to help improve the therapeutic skills of readers. The topic covers medication therapy, psychotherapy, physical therapy, replacement therapy, interventional therapy, minimally invasive therapy, endoscopic therapy, transplantation therapy, and surgical therapy; (5) Field of Vision: The editorial board members are invited to write commentaries on classic articles, hot topic articles, or latest articles to keep readers at the forefront of research and increase their levels of clinical research. Classic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations (ranking in the top 1%) after being published for more than years, reflecting the quality and impact of papers. Hot topic articles refer to papers that are included in Web of Knowledge and have received a large number of citations after being

published for no more than 2 years, reflecting cutting-edge trends in scientific research. Latest articles refer to the latest published high-quality papers that are included in PubMed, reflecting the latest research trends. These commentary articles should focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions. Basic information about the article to be commented (including authors, article title, journal name, year, volume, and inclusive page numbers); (6) Minireviews: The editorial board members are invited to write short reviews on recent advances and trends in research of molecular biology, genomics, and related cutting-edge technologies to provide readers with the latest knowledge and help improve their diagnostic and therapeutic skills; (7) Review: To make a systematic review to focus on the status quo of research, the most important research topics, the problems that have now been resolved and remain to be resolved, and future research directions; (8) Topic Highlight: The editorial board members are invited to write a series of articles (7-10 articles) to comment and discuss a hot topic to help improve the diagnostic and therapeutic skills of readers; (9) Medical Ethics: The editorial board members are invited to write articles about medical ethics to increase readers' knowledge of medical ethics. The topic covers international ethics guidelines, animal studies, clinical trials, organ transplantation, etc.; (10) Clinical Case Conference or Clinicopathological Conference: The editorial board members are invited to contribute high-quality clinical case conference; (11) Original Articles: To report innovative and original findings in hepatology; (12) Brief Articles: To briefly report the novel and innovative findings in hepatology; (13) Meta-Analysis: Covers the systematic review, mixed treatment comparison, meta-regression, and over-view of reviews, in order to summarize a given quantitative effect, e.g., the clinical effectiveness and safety of clinical treatments by combining data from two or more randomized controlled trials, thereby providing more precise and externally valid estimates than those which would stem from each individual dataset if analyzed separately from the others; (14) Case Report: To report a rare or typical case; (15) Letters to the Editor: To discuss and make reply to the contributions published in *WJH*, or to introduce and comment on a controversial issue of general interest; (16) Book Reviews: To introduce and comment on quality monographs of hepatology; and (17) Autobiography: The editorial board members are invited to write their autobiography to provide readers with stories of success or failure in their scientific research career. The topic covers their basic personal information and information about when they started doing research work, where and how they did research work, what they have achieved, and their lessons from success or failure.

#### Name of journal

*World Journal of Hepatology*

#### ISSN

ISSN 1948-5182 (online)

#### Launch date

October 31, 2009

#### Frequency

Monthly

#### Editor-in-Chief

Clara Balsano, PhD, Professor, Departement of Biomedicine,

## Instructions to authors

Institute of Molecular Biology and Pathology, Rome 00161, Italy

**Wan-Long Chuang, MD, PhD, Doctor, Professor,** Hepatobiliary Division, Department of Internal Medicine, Kaohsiung Medical University Hospital, Kaohsiung Medical University, Kaohsiung 807, Taiwan

### Editorial office

Jin-Lei Wang, Director  
Xiu-Xia Song, Vice Director  
*World Journal of Hepatology*  
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,  
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,  
Beijing 100025, China  
Telephone: +86-10-85381891  
Fax: +86-10-85381893  
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com  
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

### Publisher

Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited  
Flat C, 23/F, Lucky Plaza,  
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China  
Fax: +852-65557188  
Telephone: +852-31779906  
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com  
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

### Production center

Beijing Baishideng BioMed Scientific Co., Limited  
Room 903, Building D, Ocean International Center,  
No. 62 Dongsihuan Zhonglu, Chaoyang District,  
Beijing 100025, China  
Telephone: +86-10-85381892  
Fax: +86-10-85381893

### Representative office

USA Office  
8226 Regency Drive,  
Pleasanton, CA 94588-3144, United States

### Instructions to authors

Full instructions are available online at [http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g\\_info\\_20100316080002.htm](http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100316080002.htm).

### Indexed and Abstracted in

PubMed Central, PubMed, Digital Object Identifier, Directory of Open Access Journals, and Scopus.

## SPECIAL STATEMENT

All articles published in this journal represent the viewpoints of the authors except where indicated otherwise.

### Biostatistical editing

Statistical review is performed after peer review. We invite an expert in Biomedical Statistics to evaluate the statistical method used in the paper, including *t*-test (group or paired comparisons), chi-squared test, Ridit, probit, logit, regression (linear, curvilinear, or stepwise), correlation, analysis of variance, analysis of covariance, *etc.* The reviewing points include: (1) Statistical methods should be described when they are used to verify the results; (2) Whether the statistical techniques are suitable or correct; (3) Only homogeneous data can be averaged. Standard deviations are preferred to standard errors. Give the number of observations and subjects (*n*). Losses in observations, such as drop-outs from the study should be reported; (4) Values such as ED50, LD50, IC50 should have their 95% confidence limits calculated and compared by weighted probit analysis (Bliss and Finney); and (5) The word 'significantly' should be replaced by its synonyms (if it indicates extent) or the *P* value (if it indicates statistical significance).

### Conflict-of-interest statement

In the interests of transparency and to help reviewers assess any potential bias, *WJH* requires authors of all papers to declare any competing commercial, personal, political, intellectual, or religious interests in relation to the submitted work. Referees are also asked to indicate any potential conflict they might have reviewing a particular paper. Before submitting, authors are suggested to read "Uniform Requirements for Manuscripts Submitted to Biomedical Journals: Ethical Considerations in the Conduct and Reporting of Research: Conflicts of Interest" from International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE), which is available at: [http://www.icmje.org/ethical\\_4conflicts.html](http://www.icmje.org/ethical_4conflicts.html).

Sample wording: [Name of individual] has received fees for serving as a speaker, a consultant and an advisory board member for [names of organizations], and has received research funding from [names of organization]. [Name of individual] is an employee of [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns stocks and shares in [name of organization]. [Name of individual] owns patent [patent identification and brief description].

### Statement of informed consent

Manuscripts should contain a statement to the effect that all human studies have been reviewed by the appropriate ethics committee or it should be stated clearly in the text that all persons gave their informed consent prior to their inclusion in the study. Details that might disclose the identity of the subjects under study should be omitted. Authors should also draw attention to the Code of Ethics of the World Medical Association (Declaration of Helsinki, 1964, as revised in 2004).

### Statement of human and animal rights

When reporting the results from experiments, authors should follow the highest standards and the trial should conform to Good Clinical Practice (for example, US Food and Drug Administration Good Clinical Practice in FDA-Regulated Clinical Trials; UK Medicines Research Council Guidelines for Good Clinical Practice in Clinical Trials) and/or the World Medical Association Declaration of Helsinki. Generally, we suggest authors follow the lead investigator's national standard. If doubt exists whether the research was conducted in accordance with the above standards, the authors must explain the rationale for their approach and demonstrate that the institutional review body explicitly approved the doubtful aspects of the study.

Before submitting, authors should make their study approved by the relevant research ethics committee or institutional review board. If human participants were involved, manuscripts must be accompanied by a statement that the experiments were undertaken with the understanding and appropriate informed consent of each. Any personal item or information will not be published without explicit consents from the involved patients. If experimental animals were used, the materials and methods (experimental procedures) section must clearly indicate that appropriate measures were taken to minimize pain or discomfort, and details of animal care should be provided.

## SUBMISSION OF MANUSCRIPTS

Manuscripts should be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Number all pages consecutively, and start each of the following sections on a new page: Title Page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgements, References, Tables, Figures, and Figure Legends. Neither the editors nor the publisher are responsible for the opinions expressed by contributors. Manuscripts formally accepted for publication become the permanent property of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited, and may not be reproduced by any means, in whole or in part, without the written permission of both the authors and the publisher. We reserve the right to copy-edit and put onto our website accepted manuscripts. Authors should follow the relevant guidelines for the care and use of laboratory animals of their institution or national animal welfare committee. For the sake of transparency in regard to the performance and reporting of clinical trials, we endorse the policy of the ICMJE to refuse to publish papers on clinical trial results if the trial was not recorded in a publicly-accessible registry at its outset. The only register now

available, to our knowledge, is <http://www.clinicaltrials.gov> sponsored by the United States National Library of Medicine and we encourage all potential contributors to register with it. However, in the case that other registers become available you will be duly notified. A letter of recommendation from each author's organization should be provided with the contributed article to ensure the privacy and secrecy of research is protected.

Authors should retain one copy of the text, tables, photographs and illustrations because rejected manuscripts will not be returned to the author(s) and the editors will not be responsible for loss or damage to photographs and illustrations sustained during mailing.

### Online submissions

Manuscripts should be submitted through the Online Submission System at: <http://www.wjnet.com/esps/>. Authors are highly recommended to consult the ONLINE INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS ([http://www.wjnet.com/1948-5182/g\\_info\\_20100316080002.htm](http://www.wjnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100316080002.htm)) before attempting to submit online. For assistance, authors encountering problems with the Online Submission System may send an email describing the problem to [bjpgoffice@wjnet.com](mailto:bjpgoffice@wjnet.com), or by telephone: +86-10-85381892. If you submit your manuscript online, do not make a postal contribution. Repeated online submission for the same manuscript is strictly prohibited.

## MANUSCRIPT PREPARATION

All contributions should be written in English. All articles must be submitted using word-processing software. All submissions must be typed in 1.5 line spacing and 12 pt. Book Antiqua with ample margins. Style should conform to our house format. Required information for each of the manuscript sections is as follows:

### Title page

**Title:** Title should be less than 12 words.

**Running title:** A short running title of less than 6 words should be provided.

**Authorship:** Authorship credit should be in accordance with the standard proposed by ICMJE, based on (1) substantial contributions to conception and design, acquisition of data, or analysis and interpretation of data; (2) drafting the article or revising it critically for important intellectual content; and (3) final approval of the version to be published. Authors should meet conditions 1, 2, and 3.

**Institution:** Author names should be given first, then the complete name of institution, city, province and postcode. For example, Xu-Chen Zhang, Li-Xin Mei, Department of Pathology, Chengde Medical College, Chengde 067000, Hebei Province, China. One author may be represented from two institutions, for example, George Sgourakis, Department of General, Visceral, and Transplantation Surgery, Essen 45122, Germany; George Sgourakis, 2nd Surgical Department, Korgialenio-Benakio Red Cross Hospital, Athens 15451, Greece

**Author contributions:** The format of this section should be: Author contributions: Wang CL and Liang L contributed equally to this work; Wang CL, Liang L, Fu JF, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM designed the research; Wang CL, Zou CC, Hong F and Wu XM performed the research; Xue JZ and Lu JR contributed new reagents/analytic tools; Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF analyzed the data; and Wang CL, Liang L and Fu JF wrote the paper.

**Supportive foundations:** The complete name and number of supportive foundations should be provided, e.g. Supported by National Natural Science Foundation of China, No. 30224801

**Correspondence to:** Only one corresponding address should be provided. Author names should be given first, then author title, affiliation, the complete name of institution, city, postcode, province,

country, and email. All the letters in the email should be in lower case. A space interval should be inserted between country name and email address. For example, Montgomery Bissell, MD, Professor of Medicine, Chief, Liver Center, Gastroenterology Division, University of California, Box 0538, San Francisco, CA 94143, United States. [montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu](mailto:montgomery.bissell@ucsf.edu)

**Telephone and fax:** Telephone and fax should consist of +, country number, district number and telephone or fax number, e.g. Telephone: +86-10-85381892 Fax: +86-10-85381893

**Peer reviewers:** All articles received are subject to peer review. Normally, three experts are invited for each article. Decision on acceptance is made only when at least two experts recommend publication of an article. All peer-reviewers are acknowledged on Express Submission and Peer-review System website.

### Abstract

There are unstructured abstracts (no less than 200 words) and structured abstracts. The specific requirements for structured abstracts are as follows:

An informative, structured abstract should accompany each manuscript. Abstracts of original contributions should be structured into the following sections: AIM (no more than 20 words; Only the purpose of the study should be included. Please write the Aim in the form of "To investigate/study/..."), METHODS (no less than 140 words for Original Articles; and no less than 80 words for Brief Articles), RESULTS (no less than 150 words for Original Articles and no less than 120 words for Brief Articles; You should present *P* values where appropriate and must provide relevant data to illustrate how they were obtained, e.g.,  $6.92 \pm 3.86$  vs  $3.61 \pm 1.67$ ,  $P < 0.001$ ), and CONCLUSION (no more than 26 words).

### Key words

Please list 5-10 key words, selected mainly from *Index Medicus*, which reflect the content of the study.

### Core tip

Please write a summary of less than 100 words to outline the most innovative and important arguments and core contents in your paper to attract readers.

### Text

For articles of these sections, original articles and brief articles, the main text should be structured into the following sections: INTRODUCTION, MATERIALS AND METHODS, RESULTS and DISCUSSION, and should include appropriate Figures and Tables. Data should be presented in the main text or in Figures and Tables, but not in both.

### Illustrations

Figures should be numbered as 1, 2, 3, etc., and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each figure on a separate page. Detailed legends should not be provided under the figures. This part should be added into the text where the figures are applicable. Keeping all elements compiled is necessary in line-art image. Scale bars should be used rather than magnification factors, with the length of the bar defined in the legend rather than on the bar itself. File names should identify the figure and panel. Avoid layering type directly over shaded or textured areas. Please use uniform legends for the same subjects. For example: Figure 1 Pathological changes in atrophic gastritis after treatment. A: ...; B: ...; C: ...; D: ...; E: ...; F: ...; G: ... etc. It is our principle to publish high resolution-figures for the E-versions.

### Tables

Three-line tables should be numbered 1, 2, 3, etc., and mentioned clearly in the main text. Provide a brief title for each table. Detailed legends should not be included under tables, but rather added into the text where applicable. The information should complement, but not duplicate the text. Use one horizontal line under the title, a

## Instructions to authors

second under column heads, and a third below the Table, above any footnotes. Vertical and italic lines should be omitted.

### Notes in tables and illustrations

Data that are not statistically significant should not be noted. <sup>a</sup>*P* < 0.05, <sup>b</sup>*P* < 0.01 should be noted (*P* > 0.05 should not be noted). If there are other series of *P* values, <sup>c</sup>*P* < 0.05 and <sup>d</sup>*P* < 0.01 are used. A third series of *P* values can be expressed as <sup>e</sup>*P* < 0.05 and <sup>f</sup>*P* < 0.01. Other notes in tables or under illustrations should be expressed as <sup>1</sup>F, <sup>2</sup>F, <sup>3</sup>F; or sometimes as other symbols with a superscript (Arabic numerals) in the upper left corner. In a multi-curve illustration, each curve should be labeled with ●, ○, ■, □, ▲, △, etc., in a certain sequence.

### Acknowledgments

Brief acknowledgments of persons who have made genuine contributions to the manuscript and who endorse the data and conclusions should be included. Authors are responsible for obtaining written permission to use any copyrighted text and/or illustrations.

## REFERENCES

### Coding system

The author should number the references in Arabic numerals according to the citation order in the text. Put reference numbers in square brackets in superscript at the end of citation content or after the cited author's name. For citation content which is part of the narration, the coding number and square brackets should be typeset normally. For example, "Crohn's disease (CD) is associated with increased intestinal permeability<sup>[1,2]</sup>". If references are cited directly in the text, they should be put together within the text, for example, "From references<sup>[19,22-24]</sup>, we know that..."

When the authors write the references, please ensure that the order in text is the same as in the references section, and also ensure the spelling accuracy of the first author's name. Do not list the same citation twice.

### PMID and DOI

Please provide PubMed citation numbers to the reference list, e.g. PMID and DOI, which can be found at <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/sites/entrez?db=pubmed> and <http://www.crossref.org/SimpleTextQuery/>, respectively. The numbers will be used in E-version of this journal.

### Style for journal references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The family name of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated first and middle initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR). The title of the cited article and italicized journal title (journal title should be in its abbreviated form as shown in PubMed), publication date, volume number (in black), start page, and end page [PMID: 11819634 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.5396].

### Style for book references

Authors: the name of the first author should be typed in bold-faced letters. The surname of all authors should be typed with the initial letter capitalized, followed by their abbreviated middle and first initials. (For example, Lian-Sheng Ma is abbreviated as Ma LS, Bo-Rong Pan as Pan BR) Book title. Publication number. Publication place: Publication press, Year: start page and end page.

### Format

#### Journals

English journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

- 1 **Jung EM**, Clevert DA, Schreyer AG, Schmitt S, Rennert J, Kubale R, Feuerbach S, Jung F. Evaluation of quantitative contrast harmonic imaging to assess malignancy of liver tumors: A prospective controlled two-center study. *World J Gastroenterol* 2007; **13**: 6356-6364 [PMID: 18081224 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.13.6356]

Chinese journal article (list all authors and include the PMID where applicable)

- 2 **Lin GZ**, Wang XZ, Wang P, Lin J, Yang FD. Immunologic effect of Jianpi Yishen decoction in treatment of Pixu-diarrhoea. *Shijie Huaren Xiaobua Zazhi* 1999; **7**: 285-287

In press

- 3 **Tian D**, Araki H, Stahl E, Bergelson J, Kreitman M. Signature of balancing selection in Arabidopsis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; In press

Organization as author

- 4 **Diabetes Prevention Program Research Group**. Hypertension, insulin, and proinsulin in participants with impaired glucose tolerance. *Hypertension* 2002; **40**: 679-686 [PMID: 12411462 PMID:2516377 DOI:10.1161/01.HYP.0000035706.28494.09]

Both personal authors and an organization as author

- 5 **Vallancien G**, Emberton M, Harving N, van Moorselaar RJ; Alf-One Study Group. Sexual dysfunction in 1, 274 European men suffering from lower urinary tract symptoms. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 2257-2261 [PMID: 12771764 DOI:10.1097/01.ju.0000067940.76090.73]

No author given

- 6 21st century heart solution may have a sting in the tail. *BMJ* 2002; **325**: 184 [PMID: 12142303 DOI:10.1136/bmj.325.7357.184]

Volume with supplement

- 7 **Geraud G**, Spierings EL, Keywood C. Tolerability and safety of frovatriptan with short- and long-term use for treatment of migraine and in comparison with sumatriptan. *Headache* 2002; **42** Suppl 2: S93-99 [PMID: 12028325 DOI:10.1046/j.1526-4610.42.s2.7.x]

Issue with no volume

- 8 **Banit DM**, Kaufer H, Hartford JM. Intraoperative frozen section analysis in revision total joint arthroplasty. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2002; **(401)**: 230-238 [PMID: 12151900 DOI:10.1097/00003086-200208000-00026]

No volume or issue

- 9 Outreach: Bringing HIV-positive individuals into care. *HRS-A Careaction* 2002; 1-6 [PMID: 12154804]

### Books

Personal author(s)

- 10 **Sherlock S**, Dooley J. Diseases of the liver and biliary system. 9th ed. Oxford: Blackwell Sci Pub, 1993: 258-296

Chapter in a book (list all authors)

- 11 **Lam SK**. Academic investigator's perspectives of medical treatment for peptic ulcer. In: Swabb EA, Azabo S. Ulcer disease: investigation and basis for therapy. New York: Marcel Dekker, 1991: 431-450

Author(s) and editor(s)

- 12 **Breedlove GK**, Schorfheide AM. Adolescent pregnancy. 2nd ed. Wiczorek RR, editor. White Plains (NY): March of Dimes Education Services, 2001: 20-34

Conference proceedings

- 13 **Harnden P**, Joffe JK, Jones WG, editors. Germ cell tumours V. Proceedings of the 5th Germ cell tumours Conference; 2001 Sep 13-15; Leeds, UK. New York: Springer, 2002: 30-56

Conference paper

- 14 **Christensen S**, Oppacher F. An analysis of Koza's computational effort statistic for genetic programming. In: Foster JA, Lutton E, Miller J, Ryan C, Tettamanzi AG, editors. Genetic programming. EuroGP 2002: Proceedings of the 5th European Conference on Genetic Programming; 2002 Apr 3-5; Kinsdale, Ireland. Berlin: Springer, 2002: 182-191

Electronic journal (list all authors)

- 15 Morse SS. Factors in the emergence of infectious diseases. Emerg Infect Dis serial online, 1995-01-03, cited 1996-06-05; 1(1): 24 screens. Available from: URL: <http://www.cdc.gov/ncidod/eid/index.htm>

Patent (list all authors)

- 16 **Pagedas AC**, inventor; Ancel Surgical R&D Inc., assignee. Flexible endoscopic grasping and cutting device and positioning tool assembly. United States patent US 20020103498. 2002 Aug 1

**Statistical data**

Write as mean  $\pm$  SD or mean  $\pm$  SE.

**Statistical expression**

Express *t* test as *t* (in italics), *F* test as *F* (in italics), chi square test as  $\chi^2$  (in Greek), related coefficient as *r* (in italics), degree of freedom as *ν* (in Greek), sample number as *n* (in italics), and probability as *P* (in italics).

**Units**

Use SI units. For example: body mass, *m* (B) = 78 kg; blood pressure, *p* (B) = 16.2/12.3 kPa; incubation time, *t* (incubation) = 96 h, blood glucose concentration, *c* (glucose)  $6.4 \pm 2.1$  mmol/L; blood CEA mass concentration, *p* (CEA) = 8.6 24.5  $\mu$ g/L; CO<sub>2</sub> volume fraction, 50 mL/L CO<sub>2</sub>, not 5% CO<sub>2</sub>; likewise for 40 g/L formaldehyde, not 10% formalin; and mass fraction, 8 ng/g, *etc.* Arabic numerals such as 23, 243, 641 should be read 23243641.

The format for how to accurately write common units and quantum numbers can be found at: [http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g\\_info\\_20100107115140.htm](http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107115140.htm).

**Abbreviations**

Standard abbreviations should be defined in the abstract and on first mention in the text. In general, terms should not be abbreviated unless they are used repeatedly and the abbreviation is helpful to the reader. Permissible abbreviations are listed in Units, Symbols and Abbreviations: A Guide for Biological and Medical Editors and Authors (Ed. Baron DN, 1988) published by The Royal Society of Medicine, London. Certain commonly used abbreviations, such as DNA, RNA, HIV, LD50, PCR, HBV, ECG, WBC, RBC, CT, ESR, CSF, IgG, ELISA, PBS, ATP, EDTA, mAb, can be used directly without further explanation.

**Italics**

Quantities: *t* time or temperature, *c* concentration, *A* area, *l* length, *m* mass, *V* volume.

Genotypes: *gyrA*, *arg 1*, *c myc*, *c fos*, *etc.*

Restriction enzymes: *EcoRI*, *HindI*, *BamHI*, *Kho I*, *Kpn I*, *etc.*

Biology: *H. pylori*, *E. coli*, *etc.*

**Examples for paper writing**

All types of articles' writing style and requirement will be found in the link: <http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/NavigationInfo.aspx?id=15>

## RESUBMISSION OF THE REVISED MANUSCRIPTS

Authors must revise their manuscript carefully according to the

revision policies of Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited. The revised version, along with the signed copyright transfer agreement, responses to the reviewers, and English language Grade A certificate (for non-native speakers of English), should be submitted to the online system *via* the link contained in the e-mail sent by the editor. If you have any questions about the revision, please send e-mail to [esps@wjgnet.com](mailto:esps@wjgnet.com).

**Language evaluation**

The language of a manuscript will be graded before it is sent for revision. (1) Grade A: priority publishing; (2) Grade B: minor language polishing; (3) Grade C: a great deal of language polishing needed; and (4) Grade D: rejected. Revised articles should reach Grade A.

**Copyright assignment form**

Please download a Copyright assignment form from [http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g\\_info\\_20100107114726.htm](http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107114726.htm).

**Responses to reviewers**

Please revise your article according to the comments/suggestions provided by the reviewers. The format for responses to the reviewers' comments can be found at: [http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g\\_info\\_20100107114601.htm](http://www.wjgnet.com/1948-5182/g_info_20100107114601.htm).

**Proof of financial support**

For papers supported by a foundation, authors should provide a copy of the approval document and serial number of the foundation.

## STATEMENT ABOUT ANONYMOUS PUBLICATION OF THE PEER REVIEWERS' COMMENTS

In order to increase the quality of peer review, push authors to carefully revise their manuscripts based on the peer reviewers' comments, and promote academic interactions among peer reviewers, authors and readers, we decide to anonymously publish the reviewers' comments and author's responses at the same time the manuscript is published online.

**PUBLICATION FEE**

*WJH* is an international, peer-reviewed, OA online journal. Articles published by this journal are distributed under the terms of the Creative Commons Attribution Non-commercial License, which permits use, distribution, and reproduction in any medium and format, provided the original work is properly cited. The use is non-commercial and is otherwise in compliance with the license. Authors of accepted articles must pay a publication fee. Publication fee: 600 USD per article. All invited articles are published free of charge.



Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Co., Limited**  
Flat C, 23/F., Lucky Plaza,  
315-321 Lockhart Road, Wan Chai, Hong Kong, China  
Fax: +852-65557188  
Telephone: +852-31779906  
E-mail: [bpgoffice@wjgnet.com](mailto:bpgoffice@wjgnet.com)  
<http://www.wjgnet.com>

